Technical and Bibliographic Notes / Notes techniques et bibliographiques

The Institute has attempted to obtain the best original copy available for filming. Features of this copy which may be bibliographically unique, which may alter any of the images in the reproduction, or which may significantly change the usual method of filming, are checked below.

L'Institut a microfilmé le meilleur exemplaire qu'il lui a été possible de se procurer. Les détails de cet exemplaire qui sont peut-être uniques du point de vue bibliographique, qui peuvent modifier une image reproduite, ou qui peuvent exiger une modification dans la méthode normale de filmage sont indiqués ci-dessous.

- [ ] Coloured covers/ Couverture de couleur
- [ ] Covers damaged/ Couverture endommagée
- [ ] Covers restored and/or laminated/ Couverture restaurée et/ou pelliculée
- [ ] Cover title missing/ Le titre de couverture manque
- [ ] Coloured maps/ Cartes géographiques en couleur
- [ ] Coloured ink (i.e. other than blue or black)/ Encre de couleur (i.e. autre que bleue ou noire)
- [ ] Coloured plates and/or illustrations/ Planches et/ou illustrations en couleur
- [ ] Bound with other material/ Relié avec d'autres documents
- [x] Tight binding may cause shadows or distortion along interior margin/ La reliure serrée peut causer de l'ombre ou de la distorsion le long de la marge intérieure
- [ ] Blank leaves added during restoration may appear within the text. Whenever possible, these have been omitted from filming/ Il se peut que certaines pages blanches ajoutées lors d'une restauration apparaissent dans le texte, mais, lorsque cela était possible, ces pages n'ont pas été filmées.

- [ ] Coloured pages/ Pages de couleur
- [ ] Pages damaged/ Pages endommagées
- [ ] Pages restored and/or laminated/ Pages restaurées et/ou pelliculées
- [x] Pages discoloured, stained or foxed/ Pages décolorées, tachetées ou piquées
- [ ] Pages detached/ Pages détachées
- [x] Showthrough/ Transparence
- [ ] Quality of print varies/ Qualité inégale de l'impression
- [ ] Continuous pagination/ Pagination continue
- [ ] Includes index(es)/ Comprend un (des) index

Title on header taken from:/ Le titre de l'en-tête provient:

- [ ] Title page of issue/ Page de titre de la livraison
- [ ] Caption of issue/ Titre de départ de la livraison
- [ ] Masthead/ Générique (périodiques) de la livraison

- [x] Additional comments:/ Commentaires supplémentaires: Various pagings.

This item is filmed at the reduction ratio checked below/
Ce document est filmé au taux de réduction indiqué ci-dessous.

10X	12X	14X	16X	18X	20X	22X	24X	26X	28X	30X	32X
				✓							

MORANG'S MODERN TEXT-BOOKS

CAESAR AND VERGIL

FOR JUNIOR MATRICULATION

CAESAR: DE BELLO GALLICO, IV, 20–38; V, 1–23
VERGIL: AENEID, II, 1–505

EDITED, WITH INTRODUCTION, NOTES, EXERCISES AND VOCABULARIES

BY

E. W. HAGARTY, B.A.
PRINCIPAL, HARBORD STREET COLLEGIATE INSTITUTE, TORONTO

TORONTO
MORANG & CO., LIMITED
1906

PREFACE

These texts have been prepared specially for use by young students in the matriculation classes of high schools. Conciseness and point have been the aim of the compiler, only such information being given as the practical teacher would deem it wise to bring to the attention of his pupil. The book does not pretend at all to be exhaustive. The question has been, "What can the pupil learn?"

In the text of Caesar all long quantities have been marked in Book IV. This guidance, together with what the pupil ought to have learned from his Introductory Grammar, should be enough to enable him to "walk alone" fairly well during the rest of his studies. He should know that a vowel is short before final *t*, long (according to the precision of the Roman method) before *nf* and *ns*; that final *o* and *i* are nearly always long. He should know the ordinary long vowels of grammatical inflection, such as in *vocābat, urbēs*, etc. He should know the vowels of such words as *amīcus, lēgātus, dēspērō, rēx, rēgis, rĕgō, rĕgis, dūx, dŭcis, dūcō, dūcis*. The idea of marking all long quantities is a good one — for beginners, also for many teachers who have not in their youth made an accurate study of quantity. But surely the beginner should soon be allowed to feel that he has learned something and to experience the delicious sensation of *knowing*. Help he certainly should have, as he goes on, in things unknown. But let us give his memory a chance.

In Caesar, Book V, therefore, quantities are marked only in special cases. In the Vergil quantities have been marked in order to facilitate the pupil's progress in scanning.

In editing the text, the aim has been to follow the commonly accepted version, with the tendency to yield to the authority of Meusel for Caesar and Ribbeck for Vergil. Only important variations are given in footnotes.

In framing the exercises on Caesar, the objects kept in view have been simplicity and drill, the intention being to fix the facts of vocabulary and grammar, in the mind of the reader.

The notes have been planned to *help* in difficulties of translation and to cultivate the habit of studying syntax.

Every teacher and every school library should have good recent editions of Caesar and Vergil complete. The following are recommended: —

Caesar: Allen and Greenough, reëdited by Greenough, D'Ooge, and Daniel (Ginn & Co.); Harper and Tolman (American Book Co.); (Kelsey and Harkness are valuable, but older editions). Vergil's Aeneid: Knapp (Scott, Foresman & Co.) and Carter (Appleton). These books have been consulted in the preparation of the present text.

The grammatical references in this edition can be concisely looked up in Hagarty's "Introductory Latin Grammar." For fuller reference every teacher and honor student should have the latest standard Latin grammars, particularly Hale and Buck, Allen and Greenough (new), and, of course, the practical and concise Bennett.

CONTENTS

CAESAR

VERGIL

LIST OF ILLUSTRATIONS

CAESAR

INTRODUCTION

CAIUS JULIUS CAESAR

100 B.C. — 44 B.C.

1. **Life of Caesar.** — Caius Julius Caesar (*Gaius Iulius Caesar*) was born in 100 B.C., or according to some authorities two years earlier. His family was aristocratic and claimed descent from Iulus, son of Aeneas, the Trojan founder of the Roman nation. Caesar was well educated in childhood and by his mother carefully trained in the simple old Roman virtues.

A Democrat

From his earliest years he was identified with the democratic cause led by his uncle Marius. He defied the aristocratic leader, Sulla, by refusing to divorce Cornelia, daughter of Cinna, a follower of Marius. Sulla said he saw in him "many Mariuses."

A Soldier and Orator

After Sulla's triumph in 82 B.C., Caesar barely escaped with his life, and, finding military service in Asia, remained away from Rome. In 78 B.C., on Sulla's death, Caesar returned to Rome and prosecuted Dolabella, a corrupt governor of Macedonia. He won such fame for oratory in this case that he set out for Rhodes to perfect

himself in rhetoric. On his way thither he was captured by pirates. On paying his ransom of fifty talents ($50,000), he laughingly promised to come back and crucify his captors, a promise which he soon fulfilled.

A Rising Politician

On returning to Rome he devoted himself to politics and secured promotion through the usual grades of office. He was Military Tribune in 78 B.C., Quaestor (paymaster of the forces) in Spain in 68 B.C., and Curule Aedile (commissioner of public buildings, police, and games) in 65 B.C. In the latter office he roused great enthusiasm among the people by his lavish expenditure of money upon games and buildings, but plunged himself into enormous debt.

He spared no pains to advance himself politically; was elected Pontifex Maximus (high priest) in 63 B.C., and became Praetor (presiding judge in the law courts and magistrate next in rank to the Consuls) in 63 B.C.

In 68 B.C. his wife Cornelia died, and the following year he married Pompeia, granddaughter of Sulla and cousin of Pompey the Great. After serving as Praetor he went to Spain for a year as Propraetor and returned with enough money to pay his debts.

Triumvir

By a "political deal" he became **Consul in 59 B.C.** Caesar formed what has been called a **Triumvirate** (or coalition of three influential men) with Pompey, the military idol of Rome and leader of the *Optimates* or aristocratic faction, and Crassus, the wealthy representative of the commercial middle class. In virtue of the agreement thus

entered into, Caesar, after holding the consulship, was to go to Gaul as proconsul or governor of the Roman province of Transalpine and Cisalpine Gaul and Illyricum for five years. To cement the union, Pompey married Julia, Caesar's daughter. As consul, Caesar accomplished many reforms in the interest of the people. He then went to Gaul and soon afterwards his term of office was extended to ten years. As proconsul he held military command and acted as magistrate of the assizes.

Campaigns in Gaul

For eight or nine years (58 B.C. to 49 B.C.) he campaigned in Gaul. Legally he exercised authority over only the southeastern portion of Gaul, but he soon found pretexts for asserting his power as far as the Atlantic and the Rhine. He compelled the Helvetians (or Swiss) to return home when about to seize the lands of their neighbours; drove the German prince Ariovistus out of Gaul, thus gaining the friendship of the Aeduans (Bellum Gallicum, Book I); conquered the Belgae, the northwestern third of the Gallic nation (Book II); subdued the Veneti and thus brought the Atlantic coast under Roman sway (Book III); crossed to Britain twice and overawed its inhabitants; built a bridge across the Rhine and taught the Germans that they must stay at home (Books IV and V); quelled several revolts, and finally, after the desperate siege of Alesia, crushed a great insurrection under Vercingetorix (Books VI and VII).

During the winters between these campaigns it was his custom to return to Cisalpine Gaul and Illyricum and hold the assizes. He was thus able to be near Rome and keep alive his political influence in the city.

Quarrel with Pompey

In 54 B.C. Julia died, and in 53 B.C. Crassus was slain in battle in the East. Two links between Caesar and Pompey were thus broken. Pompey's friends of the Senate, moreover, were determined to crush Caesar and prevent him from securing the consulship again in 48 B.C., when he would be at liberty to return to Rome. He was ordered to disband his legions and return as a private citizen. He refused unless Pompey gave up his command. On Pompey's refusal, Caesar defied the Senate, crossed the river Rubicon, which separated his province from Italy proper, and at the head of his legions marched on Rome, receiving homage on every side. Pompey, his army, and the senators fled in dismay to Greece. Caesar seized the government and prepared to follow Pompey. After subduing Spain he crossed over to Greece in 48 B.C., and at **Pharsalia** defeated Pompey's splendid army of 50,000 men with his own ill-fed and badly equipped force of 23,000.

Master of Rome

Pompey fled to Egypt, where he was murdered by the king, who thought to please Caesar. Caesar, however, showed a humane spirit towards his enemies. He wept over the loss of life on the battlefield and turned away in horror from the dead face of his fallen rival. Caesar followed up his victory, subduing Asia Minor in the short campaign about which he wrote the famous letter, "*Veni, vidi, vici.*" By his victories at Thapsus in Africa (46 B.C.) and at Munda in Spain (45 B.C.) the Pompeian party was crushed. Returning to Rome, Caesar was

vested with supreme power, though all the forms of the republic were kept up.

His Death

Not long was he to enjoy the power ambition and military success had placed in his hands. He strove hard to reform the State and by the exercise of his arbitrary authority removed many evils. Among the more important of his reforms was the Julian Calendar. Enemies soon sprang up. Partly in jealousy and partly through mistaken zeal for republicanism when it was no longer possible, they accused him of aiming at kingly power. A band of conspirators, among whom was Brutus, his trusted friend, struck him down with daggers on the Ides (15th) of March, 44 B.C., as he sat hearing petitions in the Senate chamber at the foot of Pompey's statue.

2. Caesar's Character and Person. — Caesar was great as a *politician and statesman*, great as a *soldier and general*, great as an *orator*, great as a *scholar and man of letters*. Everything he attempted, he did thoroughly. He was shrewd, self-possessed, dignified yet charming in demeanour and of commanding presence. He was "ambitious, but nobly so." He coveted power, but aimed to use it for his country's good. In war he was merciless even to women and children where treachery had been shown himself; but in the hour of his triumph over political enemies he showed a most forgiving spirit. He was the idol of his soldiers. In private life his earlier career was marred by vices prevalent in his time.

In appearance, he is described as tall and slender, with sharp features, sinewy neck, large nose and lips, and keen

dark eyes. Physically he was, as a result of athletic training, capable of enduring great hardship and fatigue.

3. **Caesar's Literary Work.** — His narrative of the Gallic wars was merely a collection of field notes, written hastily in his spare time as he conducted his campaigns. Yet they are regarded as a perfect model of the elegance, lucidity, and severe simplicity that characterized the best Latin prose. Not at all ornate and entirely unimpassioned, one would scarcely believe they were written by an orator as a record of events which he hoped would bring him to distinction and power.

He wrote seven books on the Gallic war (*Commentarii de Bello Gallico*); an eighth was added by Hirtius. Caesar also wrote three books on his Civil War with Pompey and is said to have written a treatise on grammar. Cicero praises the *purity* and *simplicity* of his style as a writer, and as an orator he places him first. Quintilian says that if Caesar had devoted himself to public speaking he would have rivalled Cicero.

4. **Caesar's Military Achievements.** — In his eight campaigns in Gaul Caesar "stormed more than 800 towns and subdued 300 tribes, engaged with more than 3,000,000 men, swept over a million human beings from the earth, and took a million more prisoners to be sold into slavery." As a consequence of the terror with which he inspired the Gauls, Britons, and Germans, the tide of barbarian invasion of Italy from the North was turned back for four centuries. Besides these conquests he asserted his personal authority over Spain, Africa, and Asia Minor.

5. **Caesar's Army.** — Caesar had in Gaul at first five legions and later eight. The legionary soldiers were

Romans or Italians. Besides these he employed a large number of native Gauls as cavalry, and some slingers and archers from Crete and other countries. The organization may be described as follows: —

The legion consisted of ten *cohorts*, each about 360 strong. The cohort was divided into three *maniples*, and each maniple into two *centuries*. Although the century, as its name implies, originally consisted of 100 men, in Caesar's time it was but 60 strong. Of course the number varied through the vicissitudes of war. Losses were not made up in the legion. When new troops were required new legions were levied. To each legion was attached a body of about 300 native cavalry, bringing the total up to nearly 4000 men.

6. **The Officers** in Caesar's army were as follows: —

1. *Imperator* or *Dux*, Caesar himself, commander-in-chief or general.

2. *Legati*, staff officers or lieutenants-general, men of senatorial rank appointed by the Senate. They were the commander's deputies, being placed at the head of detachments of one or more legions.

3. The *Quaestor*, or paymaster general. He was also Commissariat officer and quartermaster-general. It was his duty, besides administering the finances of the province, to provide the army with food, pay, clothing, arms, equipment, and shelter. He could also take command as a combatant officer.

4. *Tribuni Militum*, or military tribunes. There were six in each legion and they ranked somewhat the same as colonels with us. Each was on duty for two months. Under Caesar they were not intrusted with tactical com-

mand, but looked after routine and internal economy, such as enrolment, supplies, courts-martial, etc. They were young men selected for their social standing rather than their military knowledge.

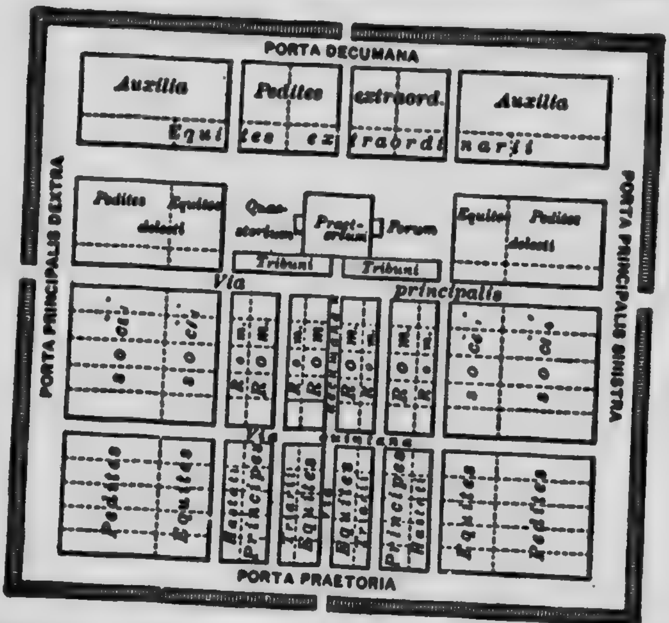
5. *Centuriones*, or non-commissioned officers, about the same as sergeants, plebeians chosen from the ranks for merit. They commanded the centuries and were therefore 60 in number to each legion. They went through a regular gradation of promotion. The chief centurion of the legion was called *primipilus*, and held a position in the legion similar to that of the sergeant-major of a regiment.

7. **Baggage.** — (*a*) The heavy baggage of the legion was called *impedimenta* and was conveyed in carts (*carri*) or on beasts of burden (*jumenta*). A legion with its baggage collected at its own rear under a small guard was said to be *impedīta* or encumbered. Where several legions were marching in the presence of the enemy the baggage of the whole body was collected at some distance in the rear, and the legions were then said to be *expedītae*, unencumbered.

(*b*) The personal "kit" of each soldier, weighing about sixty pounds, was done up into a pack called *sarcinae* and carried by means of a pole over the shoulder. It contained, besides weapons and armour (tela, gladius, scutum, galea, lorica), food for two weeks (usually unground grain), cooking utensils, trenching tools, and two rampart stakes.

8. **A Roman Camp.** — Caesar's battles were won as much by the spade and pick as by sword and lance. Before going into battle and always when halting for the

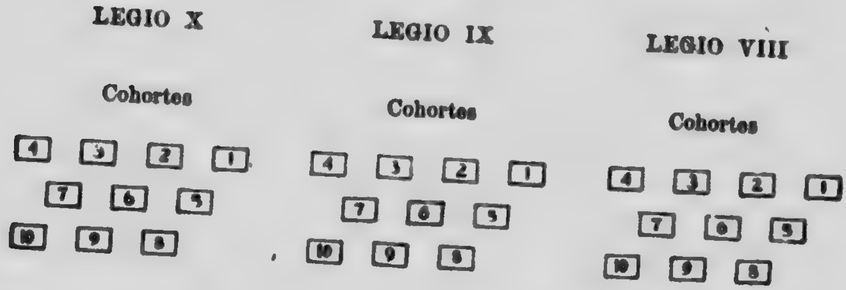
night, a carefully prepared fortification (*castra*) was made, this operation usually occupying three or four hours. A trench (*fossa*) was dug around the four sides of a square or oblong. The earth was thrown inside to form the rampart (*vallum*). There were four openings or gates (*portae*). The general's quarters, called the *praetorium*, was near the front gate. The legions and cavalry were drawn up in regular lines, with "streets" (*viae*) between them. The following diagram illustrates the camp:—



9. Method of Fighting. — Of course Caesar's tactics varied with circumstances, but the ordinary battle-line was the *acies triplex*, a threefold line with the four senior and best cohorts of each legion in front, and three in each of the rear lines. Each cohort to the rear covered a space equal to its own front between the cohorts in front.

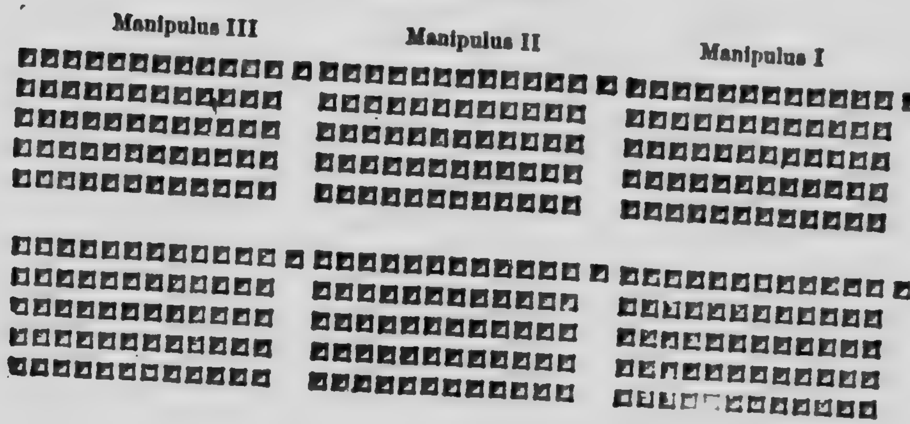
For instance:—

ACIES TRIPLEX



EACH COHORT IN LINE OF BATTLE

COHORS PRIMA



[1] Centurio prior cohortis primae, vel primipilus.
[2] Centurio posterior.
The senior centurion of the legion was the primipilus. The junior centurion was the *posterior* of Maniple III of Cohort X.

Strength of the cohort: 36 front (12 files to each maniple), each file ten men deep = 360. The cohort was in size like a small battalion, the legion like a division or brigade. The legion, however, was the smallest unit of tactical command.

BOOK IV

SUMMARY OF THE PREVIOUS NARRATIVE

Book I. — In 58 B.C. Caesar suppressed the Helvetii, who were seeking to leave home. He also drove the German prince Ariovistus out of Gaul.

Book II. — In 57 B.C. he overawed the Belgae, who had combined to resist his interference in Gaul. In this campaign he won the hardest battle of his life against the Nervii.

Book III. — In 56 B.C. he engaged in a naval war with the Veneti, a rugged tribe of the Atlantic coast, and one of his lieutenants received the submission of Aquitania, the only part of Gaul remaining to be conquered.

Book IV, 1–20. — In the early part of the summer of 55 B.C. Caesar defeated two German tribes who had, after being driven out of their own country by the Suevi, seized upon lands on the Gallic side of the Rhine and were making alliances with the neighbouring Gauls. He then built a bridge across the Rhine, and after crossing and making a demonstration of a few days against the Germans, returned and destroyed the bridge. His object was merely to hold Gaul in security from outside interference. For this reason he now decided to invade Britain and punish the inhabitants for giving aid to their kinsmen, the Gauls.

CHAPTERS 20 AND 21, SIMPLIFIED

Chapter 20

1. Exigua pars aestātis reliqua erat. In hīs locīs (quod omnis Gallia ad septentriōnēs vergit) mātūrae sunt hiemēs. Caesar tamen in Britanniam proficīscī contendit, quod, bellīs Gallicīs,[1] hostibus[2] inde auxilia subministrāta (esse) intellegēbat.

2. "Sī tempus annī," inquit, "ad bellum gerendum dēficiet, tamen māgnō mihi ūsuī[3] erit, sī modo īnsulam adīverō, genus hominum perspexerō, loca, portūs, aditūs cognōverō." Haec ferē omnia Gallīs[4] erant incognita. Neque enim temerē praeter mercātōrēs illō adit quisquam,[5] neque eīs ipsīs quicquam[5] praeter ōram maritimam atque eās regiōnēs quae sunt contrā Galliās nōtum est.

3. Itaque vocātīs ad sē undique mercātōribus, ita eōs interrogat: "Quanta est īnsulae māgnitūdō? Quae et quantae nātiōnēs eam incolunt? Quem ūsum bellī habent et quibus īnstitūtīs[6] ūtuntur? Quī sunt ad māiōrem nāvium multitūdinem idōneī portūs?"[7] Nihil hārum rērum ex eīs reperīre poterat.

[1] Abl. of time when. [2] Dat. [3] Double dat.; see Grammar. [4] Dat. [5] When is *quisquam* used? See Grammar. [6] What case does *ūtor* govern? [7] Are these questions direct or indirect? What difference in mood between the two kinds? Compare with Caesar's text of chap. 20.

Chapter 21

1. Ad haec cognōscenda priusquam perīculum faceret, Volusēnum praemittit. Idōneum enim eum arbitrātus est. Huīc mandat ut omnia explōret[1] et ad sē revertā-

tur.[1] Ipse cum omnibus cōpiīs in Morinōs proficīscitur. Hūc nāvēs ex fīnitibus regiōnibus et classem, quam superiōre aestāte fēcerat, convenīre jubet.

2. Interim cōnsilium ējus cognitum est et per mercātōrēs ad Britannōs perlātum. Ā complūribus igitur īnsulae cīvitātibus ad eum lēgātī veniunt. Hī pollicentur[2] sē obsidēs datūrōs (esse)[3] atque imperiō populī Rōmānī obtemperātūrōs. Hīs audītīs, līberāliter pollicitus est hortātusque ut in eā sententiā permanērent. Deinde eōs domum remittit.

3. Cum eīs ūnā Commium mittit, quem ipse rēgem apud Atrebātēs cōnstituerat. Virtūtem ējus et cōnsilium probābat et sibi fidēlem esse eum arbitrābātur. Auctōritās autem ējus in hīs regiōnibus māgnī[4] habēbātur. Huīc imperat ut quās possit[5] adeat cīvitātēs. "Hortāre[6] eās," inquit, "ut populī Rōmānī fidem sequantur. Mē celeriter eō[7] ventūrum (esse) eīs nūntiā." Volusēnō[8] haud multum facultātis[9] fuit hās regiōnēs[10] perspiciendī. Nāvī enim ēgredī ac sē barbarīs committere nōn audēbat. Regiōnibus igitur perspectīs quantum eī facultātis darī potuit, quīntō diē ad Caesarem revertitur. Omnia quae ibi perspexerat[11] renūntiat.

[1] What mood? [2] Compare this with *qui polliceantur* of the text. Note the difference in mood and consider how to translate the relative with the subjunctive (see Grammar, Relative of Purpose). [3] Compare with *dare* of the text. The fut. inf. is the common construction. [4] Gen. of value (see Grammar). [5] Subjunctive conveys the idea of uncertainty or supposed possibility looked at from the view point of a person quoted. [6] What mood? [7] Adv. = thither. [8] Dat. of possession. [9] Partitive gen. [10] Obj. of gerund. [11] Here the indic. of a plain relative clause is given. Observe that in the text the clause is treated as an indirect question with the subjunctive mood.


GALLIA
BRITANNIA
CELT
VEL
AQUITANIA
HISPANIA
Mare Internum
CORSICA

C. JULII CAESARIS

COMMENTARII

DE BELLO GALLICO

LIBER QUARTUS

August, 55 B.C. — Caesar had spent the earlier part of the summer subduing the Germans north of the Rhine. He now prepares to invade Britain.

(In Book IV all long vowels are marked.)

20. Exiguā parte aestātis reliquā Caesar, etsī in hīs locīs, quod omnis Gallia ad septentriōnēs vergit, mātūrae sunt hiemēs, tamen in Britanniam proficīscī contendit, quod omnibus ferē Gallicīs bellīs hostibus nostrīs inde subministrāta auxilia intellegēbat et, sī tempus annī ad bellum gerendum dēficeret, tamen māgnō sibi ūsuī fore arbitrābātur, sī modo īnsulam adīsset et genus hominum perspexisset, loca, portūs, aditūs cognōvisset; quae omnia ferē Gallīs erant incognita. Neque enim temerē praeter mercātōrēs illō adit quisquam, neque iīs ipsīs quicquam praeter ōram maritimam atque eās regiōnēs, quae sunt contrā Galliās, nōtum est. Itaque vocātīs ad sē undique mercātōribus neque quanta esset īnsulae māgnitūdō, neque quae aut quantae nātiōnēs incolerent, neque quem ūsum bellī habērent aut quibus īnstitūtīs ūterentur, neque quī essent ad mājōrem [1] nāvium multitūdinem idōneī portūs, reperīre poterat.

[1] The common reading is *majorum*.

21. Ad haec cognōscenda, priusquam perīculum faceret, idōneum esse arbitrātus C. Volusēnum cum nāvī longā praemittit. Huīc mandat, ut explōrātīs omnibus rēbus ad sē quam prīmum revertātur. Ipse cum omnibus cōpiīs in Morinōs proficīscitur, quod inde erat brevissimus in Britanniam trājectus. Hūc nāvēs undique ex fīnitimīs regiōnibus et quam superiōre aestāte ad Veneticum bellum effēcerat classem jubet convenīre. Interim cōnsiliō ējus cognitō et per mercātōrēs perlātō ad Britannōs ā complūribus īnsulae cīvitātibus ad eum lēgātī veniunt, quī polliceantur obsidēs dare atque imperiō populī Rōmānī obtemperāre. Quibus audītīs līberāliter pollicitus hortātusque, ut in eā sententiā permanērent, eōs domum remittit et cum iīs ūnā Commium, quem ipse Atrebātibus superātīs rēgem ibi cōnstituerat, cūjus et virtūtem et cōnsilium probābat et quem sibi fidēlem esse arbitrābātur, cūjusque auctōritās in hīs regiōnibus māgnī habēbātur, mittit. Huīc imperat, quās possit, adeat cīvitātēs hortēturque, ut populī Rōmānī fidem sequantur, sēque celeriter eō ventūrum nūntiet. Volusēnus perspectīs regiōnibus omnibus, quantum eī facultātis darī potuit, quī nāvī ēgredī ac sē barbarīs committere nōn audēret, quīntō diē ad Caesarem revertitur quaeque ibi perspexisset renūntiat.

22. Dum in hīs locīs Caesar nāvium parandārum causā morātur, ex māgnā parte Morinōrum ad eum lēgātī vēnērunt, quī sē dē superiōris temporis cōnsiliō excūsārent, quod hominēs barbarī et nostrae cōnsuētūdinis imperītī bellum populō Rōmānō fēcissent, sēque ea, quae imperāsset, factūrōs pollicērentur. Hōc sibi Caesar satis opportūnē accidisse arbitrātus, quod neque post tergum hostem relinquere volēbat neque bellī gerendī propter annī tempus facultātem habēbat neque hās tantulārum rērum

occupātiōnēs Britanniae antepōnendās jūdicābat, māgnum iīs numerum obsidum imperat. Quibus adductis eōs in fidem recēpit. Nāvibus circiter octōgintā onerāriīs coāctis contrāctīsque, quot satis esse ad duās trānsportandās legiōnēs exīstimābat, quod praetereā nāvium longārum habēbat, quaestōrī lēgātīs praefectīsque distribuit. Hūc accēdēbant decem et octō onerāriae nāvēs, quae ex eō locō ab mīllibus passuum octō ventō tenēbantur, quō minus in eundem portum venīre possent: hās equitibus distribuit. Reliquum exercitum Q. Titūriō Sabīnō et L. Auruncalēiō Cottae lēgātīs in Menapiōs atque in eōs pāgōs Morinōrum, ab quibus ad eum lēgātī nōn vēnerant, dūcendum dedit; P. Sulpicium Rūfum lēgātum cum eō praesidiō, quod satis esse arbitrābātur, portum tenēre jussit.

The fleet sails

23. Hīs cōnstitūtīs rēbus nactus idōneam ad nāvigandum tempestātem tertiā ferē vigiliā solvit equitēsque in ūlteriōrem portum prōgredī et nāvēs cōnscendere et sē sequī jussit. Ā quibus cum paulō tardius esset administrātum, ipse hōrā diēī circiter quārtā cum prīmīs nāvibus Britanniam attigit atque ibi in omnibus collibus expositās hostium cōpiās armātās cōnspexit. Cūjus locī haec erat nātūra, atque ita montibus angustē[1] mare continēbātur, uti ex locīs superiōribus in lītus tēlum adigī posset. Hunc ad ēgrediendum nēquāquam idōneum locum arbitrātus, dum reliquae nāvēs eō convenīrent, ad hōram nōnam in ancorīs exspectāvit. Interim lēgātīs tribūnīsque mīlitum convocātīs et quae ex Volusēnō cognōvisset, et quae fierī vellet, ostendit monuitque, ut reī mīlitāris ratiō, māximē ut maritimae rēs postulārent, ut quae celerem atque īnstābilem

[1] A very common reading is *angustis*.

mōtum habērent, ad nūtum et ad tempus omnēs rēs ab iīs administrārentur. Hīs dīmissīs, et ventum et aestum ūnō tempore nactus secundum, datō sīgnō et sublātīs ancorīs, circiter mīllia passuum septem ab eō locō prōgressus, apertō ac plānō lītore nāvēs cōnstituit.

Caesar's landing

24. At barbarī, cōnsiliō Rōmānōrum cognitō, praemissō equitātū et essedāriīs, quō plērumque genere in proeliīs ūtī cōnsuērunt, reliquīs cōpiīs subsecutī, nostrōs nāvibus ēgredī prohibēbant. Erat ob hās causās summa difficultās, quod nāvēs propter māgnitūdinem nisi in altō cōnstituī nōn poterant; mīlitibus autem ignōtīs locīs, impedītīs manibus, māgnō et gravī onere armōrum oppressīs simul et dē nāvibus dēsiliendum et in fluctibus cōnsistendum et cum hostibus erat pugnandum, cum illī aut ex āridō aut paulum in aquam prōgressī omnibus membrīs expedītīs, nōtissimīs locīs, audācter tēla conicerent et equos īnsuēfactōs incitārent. Quibus rēbus nostrī perterritī atque hūjus omnīnō generis pugnae imperītī nōn eādem alacritāte ac studiō, quō in pedestribus ūtī proeliīs cōnsuērant, ūtēbantur.

25. Quod ubi Caesar animadvertit, nāvēs longās, quārum et speciēs erat barbarīs inūsitātior et mōtus ad ūsum expedītior, paulum removērī ab onerāriīs nāvibus et rēmīs incitārī et ad latus apertum hostium cōnstituī atque inde fundīs, sagittīs, tormentīs hostēs prōpellī ac submovērī jussit; quae rēs māgnō ūsuī nostrīs fuit. Nam, et nāvium figūrā et rēmōrum mōtū et inūsitātō genere tormentōrum permōtī, barbarī cōnstitērunt ac paulum modo pedem rettulērunt. Atque nostrīs mīlitibus cunctantibus, māximē propter altitūdinem maris, quī decimae legiōnis aquilam ferēbat, contestātus deōs, ut ea rēs legiōnī fēlīciter ēvenī-

ret: 'Dēsilīte,' inquit, 'commīlitōnēs, nisi vultis aquilam hostibus prōdere: ego certē meum reī pūblicae atque imperātōrī officium praestiterō.' Hōc cum vōce māgnā dīxisset, sē ex nāvī prōjēcit atque in hostēs aquilam ferre coepit. Tum nostrī cohortātī inter sē, nē tantum dēdecus admitterētur, ūniversī ex nāvī dēsiluērunt. Hōs item ex proximīs nāvibus cum cōnspexissent, subsecūtī hostibus adpropinquāvērunt.

26. Pugnātum est ab utrīsque ācriter. Nostrī tamen, quod neque ōrdinēs servāre neque fīrmiter īnsistere neque sīgna subsequī poterant, atque alius aliā ex nāvī, quibuscumque sīgnīs occurrerat, sē adgregābat, māgnopere perturbābantur; hostēs vērō, nōtīs omnibus vadīs, ubi ex lītore aliquōs singulārēs ex nāvī ēgredientēs cōnspexerant, incitātīs equīs impedītōs adoriēbantur, plūrēs paucōs circumsistēbant, aliī ab latere apertō in ūniversōs tēla coniciēbant. Quod cum animadvertisset Caesar, scaphās longārum nāvium, item speculātōria nāvigia mīlitibus complērī jussit et, quōs labōrantēs cōnspexerat, hīs subsidia submittēbat. Nostrī, simul in āridō cōnstitērunt, suīs omnibus cōnsecūtīs in hostēs impetum fēcērunt atque eōs in fugam dedērunt, neque longius prōsequī potuērunt, quod equitēs cursum tenēre atque īnsulam capere nōn potuerant. Hōc ūnum ad prīstinam fortūnam Caesarī dēfuit.

Britons sue for peace

27. Hostēs proeliō superātī, simul atque sē ex fugā recēpērunt, statim ad Caesarem lēgātōs dē pāce mīsērunt; obsidēs datūrōs quaeque imperāsset factūrōs pollicitī sunt. Ūnā cum hīs lēgātīs Commius Atrebās vēnit, quem suprā dēmōnstrāveram ā Caesare in Britanniam praemissum. Hunc illī ē nāvī ēgressum, cum ad eōs ōrātōris modō

Caesaris mandāta dēferret, comprehenderant atque in vincula conjēcerant, tum proeliō factō remīsērunt. In petendā pāce ējus reī culpam in multitūdinem contulērunt, et propter imprūdentiam ut ignōscerētur petīvērunt. Caesar questus, quod, cum ultrō in continentem lēgātīs missīs pācem ab sē petīssent, bellum sine causā intulissent, ignōscere imprūdentiae dīxit obsidēsque imperāvit; quōrum illī partem statim dedērunt, partem ex longinquiōribus locīs arcessītam paucīs diēbus sēsē datūrōs dīxērunt. Intereā suōs remigrāre in agrōs jussērunt, prīncipēsque undique convenīre et sē cīvitātēsque suās Caesarī commendāre coepērunt.

Cavalry fails to arrive. Storm damages ships on shore

28. Hīs rēbus pāce cōnfīrmātā, post diem quārtum quam est in Britanniam ventum, nāvēs decem et octō, dē quibus suprā dēmōnstrātum est, quae equitēs sustulerant, ex superiōre portū lēnī ventō solvērunt. Quae cum adpropinquārent Britanniae et ex castrīs vidērentur, tanta tempestās subitō coorta est, ut nūlla eārum cursum tenēre posset, sed aliae eōdem, unde erant profectae, referrentur, aliae ad īnferiōrem partem īnsulae, quae est propius sōlis occāsum, māgnō suī[1] cum perīculō dēicerentur; quae tamen ancorīs jactīs cum fluctibus complērentur, necessāriō adversā nocte in altum prōvectae[2] continentem petiērunt.

29. Eādem nocte accidit, ut esset lūna plēna, quī diēs maritimōs aestūs māximōs in Ōceanō efficere cōnsuēvit, nostrīsque id erat incognitum. Ita ūnō tempore et longās nāvēs, quibus Caesar exercitum trānsportandum cūrāverat

[1] Meusel reads *suo*.
[2] Some read *profectae*.

quāsque in āridum subdūxerat, aestus complēbat, et onerāriās, quae ad ancorās erant dēligātae, tempestās adflīctābat neque ūlla nostrīs facultās aut administrandī aut auxiliandī dabātur. Complūribus nāvibus frāctis reliquae cum essent — fūnibus, ancorīs reliquīsque armāmentīs āmissīs — ad nāvigandum inūtilēs, māgna, id quod necesse erat accidere, tōtīus exercitūs perturbātiō facta est. Neque enim nāvēs erant aliae, quibus reportārī possent, et omnia dēerant, quae ad reficiendās nāvēs erant ūsuī, et, quod omnibus cōnstābat hiemārī in Galliā oportēre, frūmentum hīs in locīs in hiemem prōvīsum nōn erat.

Britons renew hostilities

30. Quibus rēbus cognitīs prīncipēs Britanniae, quī post proelium ad Caesarem convēnerant, inter sē collocutī cum equitēs et nāvēs et frūmentum Rōmānīs dēesse intellegerent et paucitātem mīlitum ex castrōrum exiguitāte cognōscerent (quae hōc erant etiam angustiōra, quod sine impedīmentīs Caesar legiōnēs trānsportāverat) optimum factū esse dūxērunt, rebelliōne factā, frūmentō commeātūque nostrōs prohibēre et rem in hiemem prōdūcere, quod, hīs superātīs aut reditū interclūsīs, nēminem posteā bellī īnferendī causā in Britanniam trānsitūrum cōnfīdēbant. Itaque rūrsus, conjūrātiōne factā, paulātim ex castrīs discēdere et suōs clam ex agrīs dēdūcere coepērunt.

31. At Caesar, etsī nōndum eōrum cōnsilia cognōverat, tamen et ex ēventū nāvium suārum et ex eō, quod obsidēs dare intermīserant, fore id, quod accidit, suspicābātur. Itaque ad omnēs cāsūs subsidia comparābat. Nam et frūmentum ex agrīs cotīdiē in castra cōnferēbat et quae gravissimē adflīctae erant nāvēs, eārum māteriā atque aere ad reliquās reficiendās ūtēbātur et quae ad eās rēs erant

ūsuī ex continentī comportārī jubēbat. Itaque, cur summō studiō ā mīlitibus administrārētur, duodecii nāvibus āmissīs, reliquīs ut nāvigārī commodē posse effēcit.

The Roman foraging party attacked

32. Dum ea geruntur, legiōne ex cōnsuētūdine ūn frūmentātum missā, quae appellābātur septima, neque ūlla ad id tempus bellī suspiciōne interpositā, cum pars homi num in agrīs remanēret, pars etiam in castra ventitāret, iī quī prō portīs castrōrum in statiōne erant, Caesarī nūntiā vērunt pulverem mājōrem, quam cōnsuētūdō ferret, in eā parte vidērī, quam in partem legiō iter fēcisset. Caesar id, quod erat, suspicātus, aliquid novī ā barbarīs initum cōnsiliī, cohortēs, quae in statiōnibus erant, sēcum in eam partem proficīscī, ex reliquīs duās in statiōnem cohortēs succēdere, reliquās armārī et cōnfestim sēsē subsequī jussit. Cum paulō longius a castrīs prōcessisset, suōs ab hostibus premī atque aegrē sustinēre et, cōnfertā legiōne, ex omnibus partibus tēla conicī animadvertit. Nam quod, omnī ex reliquīs partibus dēmessō frūmentō, pars ūna erat reliqua, suspicātī hostēs hūc nostrōs esse ventūrōs noctū in silvīs dēlituerant; tum dispersōs, dēpositīs armīs, in metendō occupātōs subitō adortī, paucīs interfectīs, reliquōs incertīs ōrdinibus perturbāverant, simul equitātū atque essedīs circumdederant.

33. Genus hōc est ex essedīs pugnae. Prīmō per omnēs partēs perequitant et tēla coniciunt atque ipsō terrōre equōrum et strepitū rotārum ōrdinēs plērumque perturbant, et cum sē inter equitum turmās īnsinuāvērunt, ex essedīs dēsiliunt et pedibus proeliantur. Aurīgae interim paulātim ex proeliō excēdunt atque ita currūs conlocant, ut, sī illī ā multitūdine hostium premantur, expedītum ad suōs recep-

tum habeant. Ita mōbilitātem equitum, stabilitātem peditum in proeliīs praestant, ac tantum ūsū cotīdiānō et exercitātiōne efficiunt, utī in dēclīvī ac praecipitī locō incitātōs equōs sustinēre et brevī moderārī ac flectere et per tēmōnem percurrere et in jugō īnsistere et sē inde in currūs citissimē recipere cōnsuērint.

34. Quibus rēbus perturbātīs nostrīs novitāte pugnae tempore opportūnissimō Caesar auxilium tulit: namque ējus adventū hostēs cōnstitērunt, nostrī sē ex timōre recēpērunt. Quō factō, ad lacessendum hostem et ad committendum proelium aliēnum esse tempus arbitrātus, suō sē locō continuit et, brevī tempore intermissō, in castra legiōnēs redūxit. Dum haec geruntur, nostrīs omnibus occupātīs, quī erant in agrīs reliquī discessērunt. Secūtae sunt continuōs complūrēs diēs tempestātēs, quae et nostrōs in castrīs continērent et hostem ā pugnā prohibērent. Interim barbarī nūntiōs in omnēs partēs dīmīsērunt paucitātemque nostrōrum mīlitum suīs praedicāvērunt, et, quanta praedae faciendae atque in perpetuum suī līberandī facultās darētur, sī Rōmānōs castrīs expulissent, dēmōnstrāvērunt. Hīs rēbus celeriter māgnā multitūdine peditātūs equitātūsque coāctā, ad castra vēnērunt.

Britons defeated in pitched battle. Caesar returns to Gaul

35. Caesar etsī idem, quod superiōribus diēbus acciderat, fore vidēbat, ut, sī essent hostēs pulsī, celeritāte perīculum effugerent, tamen nactus equitēs circiter trīgintā quōs Commius Atrebās, dē quō ante dictum est, sēcum trānsportāverat, legiōnēs in aciē prō castrīs cōnstituit. Commissō proeliō, diūtius nostrōrum mīlitum impetum hostēs ferre nōn potuērunt ac terga vertērunt. Quōs tantō spatiō secūtī, quantum cursū et vīribus efficere potuē-

runt, complūrēs ex iīs occīdērunt, deinde omnibus long lātēque aedificiīs incēnsīs sē in castra recēpērunt.

36. Eōdem diē lēgātī ab hostibus missī ad Caesarem dē pāce vēnērunt. Hīs Caesar numerum obsidum, quem ante imperāverat, duplicāvit eōsque in continentem addūci jussit, quod, propinquā diē aequinoctiī, īnfīrmīs nāvibus, hiemī nāvigātiōnem subiciendam nōn exīstimābat. Ipse idōneam tempestātem nactus, paulō post mediam noctem nāvēs solvit; quae omnēs incolumēs ad continentem pervēnērunt; sed ex iīs onerāriae duae eōsdem quōs reliquī portūs capere nōn potuērunt et paulō īnfrā dēlātae sunt.

Treacherous attack by the Morini

37. Quibus ex nāvibus cum essent expositī mīlitēs circiter trecentī atque in castra contenderent, Morinī (quōs Caesar in Britanniam proficīscēns pācātōs relīquerat), spē praedae adductī, prīmō nōn ita māgnō suōrum numerō circumstetērunt ac, sī sēsē interficī nōllent, arma pōnere jussērunt. Cum illī, orbe factō, sēsē dēfenderent, celeriter ad clāmōrem hominum circiter mīllia sex convēnērunt. Quā rē nūntiātā, Caesar omnem ex castrīs equitātum suīs auxiliō mīsit. Interim nostrī mīlitēs impetum hostium sustinuērunt atque amplius hōrīs quattuor fortissimē pugnāvērunt et, paucīs vulneribus acceptīs, complūrēs ex hīs occīdērunt. Posteā vērō quam equitātus noster in cōnspectum vēnit, hostēs, abjectīs armīs, terga vertērunt māgnusque eōrum numerus est occīsus.

38. Caesar posterō diē T. Labiēnum lēgātum cum iīs legiōnibus, quās ex Britanniā redūxerat, in Morinōs, quī rebelliōnem fēcerant, mīsit. Quī cum propter siccitātēs palūdum quō sē reciperent, nōn habērent, quō superiōre

annō perfugiō fuerant ūsī, omnēs ferē in potestātem Labiēnī pervēnērunt. At Q. Titūrius et L. Cotta lēgātī, quī in Menapiōrum fīnēs legiōnēs dūxerant, omnibus eōrum agrīs vāstātīs, frūmentīs succīsīs, aedificiīs incēnsīs, quod Menapiī sē omnēs in dēnsissimās silvās abdiderant, sē ad Caesarem recēpērunt. Caesar in Belgīs omnium legiōnum hīberna cōnstituit. Eō duae omnīnō cīvitātēs ex Britanniā obsidēs mīsērunt, reliquae neglexērunt. Hīs rēbus gestīs, ex litterīs Caesaris diērum vīgintī supplicātiō ā senātū dēcrēta est.

C. JULII CAESARIS

COMMENTARII

DE BELLO GALLICO

LIBER QUINTUS

54 B.C. — Fleet built for second invasion of Britain.

(N.B. — *Hereafter quantities are marked only in special cases.*)

1. L. Domitio, Ap. Claudio consulibus discēdēns ab hībernis Caesar in Ītaliam, ut quotannīs facere consuērat, legatis imperat, quos legionibus praefecerat, utī quam plūrimas possint[1] hieme nāves aedificandas veteresque reficiendas cūrent.[1] Earum mōdum fōrmamque dēmonstrat. Ad celeritatem onerandi subductionesque[2] paulo facit hūmiliores, quam quibus in nostro mari ūtī consuevimus, atque id eo magis, quod propter crēbras commūtationes aestuum minus māgnos ibi fluctūs fieri cognoverat; ad onera ac multitudinem jūmentorum transportandam paulo lātiores, quam quibus in relīquis ūtimur maribus. Has omnes āctuārias imperat fieri, quam ad rem hūmilitas multum adjūvat. Ea, quae sunt usui ad armandas naves, ex Hispania adportari jūbet. Ipse, conventibus Galliae citerioris perāctis, in Illyricum proficīscitur, quod a Pirustis finitimam partem provinciae incursionibus vāstari audiebat. Eo cum vēnisset, cīvitatibus mīlites imperat

[1] Ms., *possent, curarent.* [2] Meusel, *subductionisque.*

certumque in lŏcum convenire jubet. Qua re nūntiata, Pirustae legatos ad eum mittunt, qui doceant nihil earum rerum pūblico factum consilio, seseque paratos esse demonstrant[1] omnibus rationibus de injuriis satisfacere. Perceptā ōratione eorum, Caesar obsides imperat eosque ad certam diem addūci jubet; nisī ita fēcerint, sese bello cīvitatem persecūturum demonstrat. Iis ad diem adductis, ut imperaverat, arbitros inter civitates dat, qui lītem aestiment poenamque constituant.

2. His confectis rebus conventibusque perāctis in citeriorem Galliam revertitur atque inde ad exercitum proficīscitur. Eo cum vēnisset, circumitis omnibus hibernis, singulari militum stūdio in summā omnium rerum inŏpiā circiter sēscentas ejus generis, cūjus sūprā demonstravimus, naves et longas viginti octo invēnit instructas neque multum abèsse ab eo, quīn paucis diebus deduci possint. Conlaudatis militibus atque iis, qui negōtio praefuerant, quid fieri velit ostendit atque omnes ad portum Itium convenire jubet, quo ex portu commodissimum in Britanniam trājectum esse cognoverat, circiter millium passuum trīgintā a continenti; huīc rei quod satis esse visum est militum relīquit. Ipse cum legionibus expedītis quattuor et equitibus octingentis in fines Trēverorum proficīscitur, quod hi neque ad concilia veniebant neque imperio pārebant Germānosque Transrhēnānos sollicitare dīcebantur.

Trouble with the Treveri

3. Haec cīvitas longē plurimum totīus Galliae equitatu valet māgnasque habet cōpias peditum, Rhēnumque, ut suprā demonstravimus, tangit. In ea civitate duō de prīncipatu inter se contendebant, Indutiomārus et Cinge-

[1] Meusel, *demonstrent*.

tōrix; ē quibus alter, simul atque de Caesaris legionumque adventu cognitum est, ad eum vēnit, se suosque omnes in officio futuros neque ab amīcitia populi Rōmāni dēfecturos confīrmavit quaeque in Trēveris gererentur ostendit. At Indutiomarus equitatum peditatumque cōgere iisque, qui per aetatem in armis esse nōn poterant, in silvam Arduennam abditis — quae ingenti māgnitudine per mēdios fines Treverorum a flūmine Rhēno ad initium Rēmorum pertinet — bellum parare instituit; sed posteāquam nōn nūlli prīncipes ex ea civitate, et familiāritate Cingetorigis adducti et adventu nostri exercitūs perterriti, ad Caesarem vēnērunt et de suis prīvātim rebus ab eo petere coeperunt, quōniam civitati cōnsūlere non possent, veritus, nē ab omnibus dēsererētur, legatos ad Caesarem mittit: Sese idcirco ab suis discedere atque ad eum venire nōluisse, quō facilius civitatem in officio continēret, ne omnis nōbilitatis discessu plēbs propter imprūdentiam lāberetur: itaque esse civitatem in sua potestate, seseque, sī Caesar permitteret, ad eum in castra venturum, suas civitatisque fortūnas ejus fidei permissurum.

4. Caesar, etsī intellegebat, quā de causā ea dicerentur, quaeque eum res ab instituto cōnsilio deterrēret, tamen, nē aestatem in Trēveris consūmere cōgeretur omnibus ad Britannicum bellum rebus comparatis, Indutiomarum ad se cum ducentis obsidibus venire jussit. His adductis, in iis filio propinquisque ejus omnibus, quos nominatim evocaverat, consōlatus Indutiomarum hortatusque est, uti in officio manēret; nihilo tamen sēcius principibus Treverorum ad se convocatis, hos singillatim Cingetorigi conciliavit, quod cum merito ejus a se fieri intellegebat, tum māgni interesse arbitrabatur ejus auctōritatem inter

suos quam plurimum valēre, cujus tam ēgregiam in se voluntatem perspexisset. Id tŭlit factum graviter Indutiomarus [suam grătiam inter suos minui] et, qui jam ante inimīco in nos animo fuisset, multo gravius hōc dolōre exarsit.

Caesar ready to sail

5. His rebus constitutis Caesar ad portum Itium cum legionibus pervĕnit. Ibi cognōscit sexāgintā nāves, quae in Meldis factae erant, tempestate rējectas cursum tenēre non potuisse atque eodem, unde erant profectae, revertisse; reliquas paratas ad nāvigandum atque omnibus rebus instructas invĕnit. Eodem equitatus totīus Galliae convĕnit nŭmero mīllium quattuor prīncipesque ex omnibus cīvitatibus; ex quibus perpaucos, quorum in se fidem perspexerat, relinquere in Gallia, reliquos obsidum loco secum ducere decreverat, quod, cum ipse abesset, motum Galliae verebatur.

Dumnorix the Aeduan gives trouble

6. Erat unā cum cēteris Dumnorix Aeduus, de quo ante ab nobis dictum est. Hunc secum habēre in primis cōnstituerat, quod eum cŭpidum rerum nŏvarum, cŭpidum imperii, māgni animi, māgnae inter Gallos auctōritatis cognoverat. Accēdebat hūc, quod in concilio Aeduorum Dumnorix dīxerat sibi a Caesare rēgnum civitatis deferri; quod dictum Aedui graviter ferebant, neque recūsandi aut deprecandi causā legatos ad Caesarem mittere audebant. Id factum ex suis hospitibus Caesar cognoverat. Ille omnibus primo precibus petere contendit, ut in Gallia relinqueretur, partim quod insuētus navigandi mare timēret, partim quod religionibus impediri sese diceret.

Posteāquam id obstinate sibi negari vīdit, omni spe impetrandi ademptā, prīncipes Galliae sollicitare, sēvocare singulos hortarique coepit, ūti in continenti remanērent: metu tĕrritare: non sine causā fieri, ut Gallia omni nobilitate spŏliaretur; id esse consilium Caesaris, ut, quos in cōnspectu Galliae interficere verērētur, hos omnes in Britanniam trāductos necaret; fidem reliquis interponere, jūsjūrandum poscere, ut, quod esse ex usu Galliae intellexissent, communi consilio administrarent. Haec a compluribus ad Caesarem deferebantur.

7. Qua re cognita Caesar, quod tantum civitati Aeduae dīgnitatis tribuebat, coërcendum atque deterrendum, quibuscumque rebus posset, Dumnorigem statuebat; quod longius ejus āmentiam progredi videbat, prospiciendum, ne quid sibi ac reipūblicae nocēre posset. Itaque dies circiter viginti quīnque in eo loco commoratus, quod Corus ventus navigationem impediebat, qui magnam partem omnis temporis in his locis flare consuevit, dăbat operam, ut in officio Dumnorigem continēret, nihilo tamen secius omnia ejus consilia cognosceret; tandem idoneam nactus tempestatem, milites equitesque conscendere in naves jubet. At, omnium impedītis animis, Dumnorix cum equitibus Aeduorum a castris insciente Caesare dŏmum discedere coepit. Qua re nūntiata, Caesar, intermissa prŏfectione atque omnibus rebus postpositis, magnam partem equitatūs ad eum insequendum mittit retrahique imperat; si vim faciat neque pāreat, interfici jubet, nihil hunc se absente pro sāno facturum arbitratus, qui praesentis imperium neglexisset. Ille enim rĕvocatus rĕsistere ac se manu dēfendere suorumque fidem implorare coepit saepe clāmitans līberum se līberaeque esse civitatis. Illi, ut erat imperatum, circumsistunt hominem atque inter-

ficiunt; at equites Aedui ad Caesarem omnes rĕvertuntur.

Caesar sails the second time

8. His rebus gestis, Labieno in continente cum tribus legionibus et equitum millibus duobus relicto, ut portūs tuēretur et rem frumentariam prōvidēret, quaeque in Gallia gererentur cognosceret, consiliumque pro tempore et pro re caperet, ipse cum quīnque legionibus et pări nŭmero equitum, quem in continenti relinquēbat,[1] ad sōlis occasum naves solvit et lēni Africo prōvectus, mediā circiter nocte vento intermisso, cursum non tenuit et, longius delatus aestu, orta lūce sub sinistra Britanniam relictam conspexit. Tum rūrsus, aestūs commutationem secutus, rēmis contendit, ut eam partem īnsulae caperet, quā optimum esse ēgressum superiore aestate cognoverat. Qua in re admodum fuit militum virtus laudanda, qui vectoriis grăvibusque năvigiis, non intermisso rēmigandi labore, longarum nāvium cursum adaequārunt. Accessum est ad Britanniam omnibus navibus meridiano ferē tempore, neque in eo loco hostis est visus; sed, ut posteā Caesar ex captīvis cognovit, cum magnae manūs eo convenissent, multitudine navium perterritae (quae cum annotīnis prīvatisque, quas sui quisque commŏdi fecerat, amplius octingentae uno erant visae tempore) a litore discesserant ac se in superiora loca abdiderant.

Caesar lands quietly and pursues the enemy inland

9. Caesar, exposito exercitu et loco castris idoneo capto, ubi ex captivis cognovit, quo in loco hostium copiae consedissent, cohortibus decem ad mare relictis et equitibus

[1] Another reading, *reliquerat*.

trĕcentis, qui praesidio navibus essent, de tertia vigilia ad hostes contendit eo minus veritus navibus, quod in lītore molli atque aperto deligatas ad ancoram relinquebat, et praesidio navibusque Quintum Atrium praefecit. Ipse noctu progressus millia passuum circiter duŏdecim hostium copias conspicatus est. Illi, equitatu atque essedis ad flumen progressi, ex loco superiore nostros prohibēre et proelium committere coepērunt. Repulsi ab equitatu se in silvas abdidērunt, locum nacti ēgregiē et nātūrā et opere munītum, quem domestici belli, ut videbantur,[1] causā jam ante praeparaverant; nam crēbris arbŏribus succisis omnes introĭtūs erant praeclusi. Ipsi ex silvis rāri propugnabant nostrosque intra munītiones ingredi prŏhibebant. At milites legionis septimae, testudine factā et aggere ad munitiones adjecto, locum ceperunt eosque ex silvis expulerunt paucis vulneribus acceptis. Sed eos fugientes longius Caesar prosequi vetuit, et quod loci naturam ignorabat, et quod, magna parte diēi consumpta, munitioni castrorum tempus relinqui volebat.

Caesar hears his ships are wrecked

10. Postrīdie ejus diei māne trīpertīto milites equitesque in expedītionem misit, ut eos, qui fūgerant, persequerentur. His aliquantum itineris progressis, cum jam extremi essent in prōspectu, equites a Quinto Atrio ad Caesarem venerunt, qui nūntiarent superiore nocte, māxima coorta tempestate, prope omnes naves adflīctas atque in litore ējectas esse, quod neque ancŏrae funesque subsisterent, neque nautae gŭbernatoresque vim tempestatis păti possent; itaque ex eo concursu navium magnum esse incommodum acceptum.

[1] Meusel, *videbatur*.

Britons gather under Cassivellaunus

11. His rebus cognitis, Caesar legiones equitatumque revocari atque in itinere resistere jubet, ipse ad naves revertitur; eadem fere, quae ex nūntiis litterisque cognoverat, cōram perspicit, sīc ut, amissis circiter quadraginta navibus, relīquae tamen refici posse magno negotio viderentur. Itaque ex legionibus fabros deligit et ex continenti alios arcessi jubet; Labieno scribit, ut, quam plurimas possit,[1] iis legionibus, quae sint[2] apud eum, naves instituat. Ipse, etsi res erat multae operae ac laboris, tamen commodissimum esse statuit omnes naves subduci et cum castris una munitione conjungi. In his rebus circiter dies decem consūmit, ne nocturnis quidem temporibus ad laborem militum intermissis. Subductis navibus castrisque ēgrĕgiē mūnītis, easdem copias, quas ante, praesidio navibus relīquit; ipse eodem, unde redierat, proficīscitur. Eo cum venisset, majores jam undique in eum locum copiae Britannorum convenerant, summā imperii bellique administrandi communi consilio permissā Cassivellauno; cujus fines a maritimis civitatibus flumen dividit, quod appellatur Tamĕsis, a mari circiter millia passuum octoginta. Huic superiōre tempŏre cum relīquis civitatibus continentia bella intercesserant; sed nostro adventu permoti, Britanni hunc toti bello imperioque praefecerant.

Description of Britain and its people

12. Britanniae pars interior ab iis incolitur, quos natos in insula ipsi[3] memoriā proditum dicunt, maritima pars

[1] Common reading *posset*. [2] Common reading *sunt*.
[3] Meusel, *ipsa*.

ab iis, qui praedae ac belli inferendi causā ex Belgis transierunt (qui omnes fere iis nominibus civitatum appellantur, quibus orti ex civitatibus eo pervenerunt) et bello illato ibi permanserunt atque agros colere coeperunt. Hominum est infīnīta multitudo creberrimaque aedificia fere Gallicis consimilia, pecŏrum[1] magnus numerus. Utuntur [aut aere] aut nummo aureo aut taleis ferreis ad certum pondus examinatis pro nummo. Nāscitur ibi plumbum album in mediterrāneis rĕgionibus, in maritīmis ferrum, sed ejus exigua est copia; aere utuntur importato. Materia cujusque generis ut in Gallia est praeter fāgum atque abiĕtem. Lepŏrem et gallīnam et ānserem gustare fās non pŭtant; haec tamen alunt animi voluptatisque causā. Loca sunt temperatiora quam in Gallia, remissioribus frigoribus.

13. Insula naturā triquetra, cujus unum lătus est contrā Galliam. Hujus lateris alter angulus, qui est ad Cantium, quo ferē omnes ex Gallia naves adpelluntur, ad orientem solem, infĕrior ad merīdiem spectat. Hoc pertinet circiter millia passuum quingenta. Alterum vergit ad Hispaniam atque occidentem solem; qua ex parte est Hibernia, dīmidio minor, ut aestimatur, quam Britannia, sed pari spatio transmissus atque ex Gallia est in Britanniam. In hoc medio cursu est insula, quae appellatur Mona: complures praeterea minores subjectae insulae exīstimantur; de quibus insulis nōn nūlli scrīpserunt dies continuos trīgintā sub brūmā[2] esse noctem. Nos nihil de eo percontationibus reperiebamus, nisi certis ex aqua mensuris breviores esse quam in continenti noctes videbamus. Hujus est longitudo lateris, ut fert illorum opīnio, septingentorum millium. Tertium est contrā

[1] Meusel, *pecoris*. [2] Meusel, *brumam*.

septentriones; cui parti nūlla est objecta terra, sed ejus angulus lateris māximē ad Germaniam spectat. Hoc millia passuum octingenta in longitudinem esse exīstimatur. Ita omnis insula est in circuitu vīciēs centum millium passuum.

14. Ex his omnibus longe sunt humanissimi, qui Cantium incolunt, quae regio est maritima omnis, neque multum a Gallica differunt consuetudine. Interiores plerīque frumenta non serunt, sed lacte et carne vivunt pellibusque sunt vestīti. Omnes vēro se Britanni vitro inficiunt quod caeruleum efficit colorem, atque hoc horridiore[1] sunt in pugna aspectu; capilloque sunt promisso, atque omni parte corporis rasa praeter caput et labrum superius. Uxores habent dēni duodēnique inter se communes et maxime frātres cum fratribus parentesque cum līberis; sed si qui sunt ex his nati, eorum habentur liberi, quo primum virgo quaeque deducta est.

Britons harass Caesar

15. Equites hostium essedariique ācriter proelio cum equitatu nostro in itinere conflīxerunt, tamen ut nostri omnibus partibus superiores fuerint atque eos in silvas collesque compūlerint; sed, compluribus interfectis, cupidius insecuti, nōn nūllos ex suis amiserunt. At illi, intermisso spatio, imprudentibus nostris atque occupatis in munitione castrorum, subito se ex silvis ejecerunt, impetuque in eos facto, qui erant in statione pro castris collocati, acriter pugnaverunt, duabusque missis subsidio cohortibus a Caesare atque his primis legionum duarum, cum hae perexiguo intermisso loci spatio inter se constitissent, novo genere pugnae perterritis nostris, per

[1] Meusel, *horribiliores*; see Notes.

medios audacissime perruperunt seque inde incolumes receperunt. Eo die Q. Laberius Durus, tribunus militum, interficitur. Illi, pluribus submissis cohortibus, repelluntur.

16. Toto hoc in genere pugnae cum sub oculis omnium ac pro castris dimicaretur, intellectum est nostros propter gravitatem armorum, quod neque insequi cedentes possent neque ab signis discedere audērent, mīnus aptos esse ad hujus generis hostem; equites autem magno cum periculo proelio dīmicare, propterea quod illi, etiam consulto plerumque cederent et, cum paulum ab legionibus nostros removissent, ex essedis desilirent et pedibus dispari proelio contenderent. Equestris autem proelii ratio et cedentibus et insequentibus par atque idem periculum inferebat. Accedebat huc, ut numquam conferti, sed rari magnisque intervallis proeliarentur stationesque dispositas habērent, atque alios alii deinceps exciperent, integrique et recentes defatigatis succederent.

Caesar wins a victory. Britons disperse

17. Postero die procul a castris hostes in collibus constitērunt rārique se ostendere et lēnius quam prīdiē nostros equites proelio lacessere coeperunt. Sed merīdiē cum Caesar pabulandi causā tres legiones atque omnem equitatum cum Caio Trebonio legato misisset, repente ex omnibus partibus ad pabulatores advolaverunt, sīc uti ab sīgnis legionibusque non absisterent. Nostri, acriter in eos impetu facto, reppulerunt neque finem sequendi fecerunt, quoad subsidio confisi equites, cum post se legiones vidērent, praecipites hostes ēgērunt, magnoque eorum numero interfecto, neque sui colligendi neque consistendi aut ex essedis desiliendi facultatem dederunt. Ex hac

fūgā protinus, quae undique convenerant auxilia discesserunt, neque post id tempus umquam summis nobiscum copiis hostes contenderunt.

Caesar attacks Cassivellaunus

18. Caesar, cognito consilio eorum, ad flumen Tamesim in fines Cassivellauni exercitum dūxit; quod flumen uno omnīno loco pedibus, atque hoc aegre, transiri potest. Eo cum venisset, animum advertit ad alteram fluminis rīpam magnas esse copias hostium instructas. Ripa autem erat acutis sudibus praefixis munita, ejusdemque generis sub aqua defixae sudes flumine tegebantur. His rebus cognitis a captīvis perfūgisque, Caesar, praemisso equitatu, confestim legiones subsequi jussit. Sed ea celeritate atque eo impetu milites iērunt, cum capite solo ex aqua exstarent, ut hostes impetum legionum atque equitum sustinēre non possent ripasque dimitterent ac se fugae mandarent.

19. Cassivellaunus, ut suprā demonstravimus, omni deposita spe contentionis, dimissis amplioribus copiis, millibus circiter quattuor essedariorum relictis, itinera nostra servabat paulumque ex via excedebat locisque impedītis ac silvestribus sese occultabat atque iis regionibus, quibus nos iter facturos cognoverat, pecora atque homines ex agris in silvas compellebat et, cum equitatus noster liberius praedandi vāstandique causā se in agros ejecerat,[1] omnibus viis sēmitisque essedarios ex silvis emittebat et magno cum periculo nostrorum equitum cum iis confligebat atque hoc metu latius vagari prohibebat. Relinquebatur, ut neque longius ab agmine legionum discedi Caesar pateretur, et tantum in agris vāstandis incen-

[1] Meusel, *effunderet*.

diisque faciendis hostibus noceretur, quantum labore atque itinere legionarii milites efficere poterant.

20. Interim Trinobantes, prope fīrmissima earum regionum civitas (ex qua Mandubracius adulēscēns, Caesaris fidem secutus, ad eum in continentem Galliam venerat, — cujus pater in ea civitate rēgnum obtinuerat interfectusque erat a Cassivellauno, ipse fūgā mortem vītaverat) legatos ad Caesarem mittunt pollicenturque sese ei dēdituros atque imperata facturos; petunt, ut Mandubracium ab injuria Cassivellauni defendat atque in civitatem mittat, qui praesit imperiumque obtineat. His Caesăr imperat obsides quadraginta frumentumque exercitui Mandubraciumque ad eos mittit. Illi imperata celeriter fecerunt, obsides ad numerum frumentumque miserunt.

A British "town" stormed

21. Trinobantibus defensis atque ab omni militum injuria prohibitis Cenimagni, Segontiăci, Ancalites, Bibrŏci, Cassi, legationibus missis, sese Caesari dedunt. Ab his cognoscit non longe ex eo loco oppidum Cassivellauni abesse silvis paludibusque mūnītum, quo satis māgnus hominum pecorisque numerus convenerit. Oppidum autem Britanni vocant, cum silvas impedītas vāllo atque fossa munierunt, quo incursionis hostium vitandae causa convenire consuērunt. Eo proficīscitur cum legionibus: locum reperit egregie nātūrā atque opere munitum: tamen hunc duabus ex partibus oppugnare contendit. Hostes paulisper morati militum nostrorum impetum non tulerunt seseque aliā ex parte oppidi ejecerunt. Magnus ibi numerus pecoris repertus multique in fuga sunt comprehensi atque interfecti.

British attack on naval camp fails. Cassivellaunus submits

22. Dum haec in his locis geruntur, Cassivellaunus ad Cantium, quod esse ad mare supra demonstravimus, quibus regionibus quattuor reges praeerant, Cingetorix, Carvilius, Taximagulus, Segovax, nuntios mittit atque his imperat, uti, coāctis omnibus copiis, castra navalia de improviso adoriantur atque oppugnent. Ii cum ad castra venissent, nostri, eruptione facta, multis eorum interfectis, capto etiam nobili duce Lugotorige, suos incolumes reduxerunt. Cassivellaunus hoc proelio nūntiato, tot detrimentis acceptis, vāstatis finibus, maxime etiam permotus defectione civitatum, legatos per Atrebatem Commium de deditione ad Caesarem mittit. Caesar cum constituisset hiemare in continenti propter repentīnos Galliae motūs, neque multum aestatis superesset, atque id facile extrahi posse intellegeret, obsides imperat et quid in annos singulos vectīgālis populo Romano Britannia penderet, constituit; interdicit atque imperat Cassivellauno, ne Mandubracio neu Trinobantibus noceat.

Caesar sails for Gaul

23. Obsidibus acceptis exercitum reducit ad mare, naves invēnit refectas. His deductis, quod et captivorum magnum numerum habebat, et non nullae tempestate deperierant naves, duobus commeatibus exercitum reportare instituit. Ac sic accidit, uti ex tanto navium numero tot navigationibus neque hoc neque superiore anno ūlla omnino navis, quae milites portaret, desideraretur; at ex iis, quae inanes ex continenti ad eum remitterentur et prioris commeātūs expositis militibus et quas postea Labienus

faciendas curaverat numero sexaginta perpaucae locum caperent, reliquae fere omnes rejicerentur. Quas cum aliquamdiu Caesar frūstrā exspectāsset, ne anni tempore a navigatione excluderetur, quod aequinoctium suberat, necessario angustius milites collocavit ac, summa tranquillitate consecuta, secundā initā cum solvisset vigiliā, prima luce terram attigit omnesque incolumes naves perdūxit.

CAESAR, DE BELLO GALLICO

NOTES

BOOK IV

Chapter 20.

Si tempus deficeret (trans. "if the season were too short"): the historical indirect for *si deficiet.* What is the rule for the mood of a subord. clause in indirect discourse? Explain the change of tense (see Sequence). —— **magno sibi usui**: double dat.; *sibi* of interest, *usui* of tendency or purpose served. —— **fore**: = *futurum esse.* —— Distinguish **mŏdŏ** (adv.) from *modō* (abl. of *modus*). —— **adisset, perspexisset, cognovisset**: historical indirect for fut. perf. indic. Why the mood, why the tense? —— Decline **loca** and **portus** in sing. and plur. —— **Gallis**: dat. of interest, mod. *incognita.* —— **illō**: adv.; compare *eō.* —— Distinguish use of **quisquam** (*any*) from that of *quis* and *aliquis.* —— **Quanta esset**: what kind of question? Explain the *mood.* Note other examples in this sentence. Explain the *tense* and translate into Latin: "He cannot find out how great the island *is*, what tribes *inhabit* it, what experience in war they *have*, and what customs they *observe.*"

QUESTIONS IN GRAMMAR

1. Decline in agreement *exigua pars, his locis, omnis Gallia, omnibus bellis, magno usui, eas regiones, maior multitudo.*
2. Give gender of *pars, aestas, locis, hiems, auxilia, tempus, usui, portus, regio, magnitudo, natio, institutis, navium,* and refer to rules.
3. Recite prin. parts of *proficisci, intellego, gero, deficio, adisset, cognosco, incolo, utor, reperio.*
4. Compare *maturus, magnus, idoneus.*

Chapter 21.

Cognoscenda: gerundive agreeing with *haec.* Give the gerund construction and note any other way of expressing this purpose.

—— **priusquam faceret**: *priusquam* takes indic. of *fact* and subjunct. of *anticipated possibility*. Here the possibility is represented as one that occurred to the mind of the person quoted. —— **periculum**: risk, hazard; here translate "make the attempt" or "venture." —— **ad se**: *se* here is indirect for the speaker. The direct would be "return to me." Trans. into Latin. —— **revertātur**: note the primary (vivid) sequence after *mandat*. What would the historical be? —— **Quam . . . classem**: here *Quam* is a rel. adj. mod. *classem* in the same clause, "what fleet he had built." Our syntax requires "fleet" as the antecedent, "the fleet which," etc. —— **perlato**: give principal parts of *perfero*. —— **qui polliceantur**: rel. of purpose. Be careful not to translate this as if it were indic. *pollicentur;* say "ambassadors come to promise." Observe the primary sequence and give the historical substitute. —— **dare**: inf. as noun, the obj. of *polliceantur*. The ordinary construction would use the phrase *se daturos* (*esse*) as the obj. —— **imperio**: what case do verbs of obeying govern? —— **Quibus audītis . . . pollicitus.** Great care should be taken in rendering these participles into Eng. A literal mixing of the absolute phrase with a participle qualifying the subject is not proper; say "Having heard these, he made liberal promises, etc., . . and sent them back home." —— **domum**: when is *motion towards* expressed without the prep. *ad*? —— **Unā**: adv., "together," "along." —— **Atrebatibus superatis**: abl. abs. defining the time of the occurrence, "when he had conquered," etc. —— **et virtutem**: *et* = both. —— **sibi refers to Caesar**; indirect for the person quoted; C. would say "mihi fidelem eum esse arbitror." —— **Cujusque**: "and of whom," "and whose," not from *quisque*. —— **Magni habeo**, "I esteem highly"; *magni* (*pretii*), gen. of value, one phase of the gen. of description; *habeo*, I hold, deem, or consider. —— **Huic imperat**, etc.: the subjunctives in this are puzzling. Trans. as if it read as follows: *Huic imperat* (*ut*) *quas civitates possit adeat* ("visit what states he can"), (*ut eas*) *hortetur ut . . . sequantur* ("and urge them to espouse the cause of Caesar"). The verbs depending upon *imperat* are *adeat, hortetur, nuntiet.* With *ut* suppressed they form abbreviated clauses of purpose or indirect command. —— **possit**: subjunct. because in a subord. cl. indirect quotation. —— **seque**: *se* means Caesar, the person quoted; direct statement *ego veniam*. —— **Huic**: note the case governed by

impero; also the Latin equivalent for Eng. inf. after the verb of commanding.—— **Quantum** : a neuter substantive, subject of *potuit*, the whole clause acting as a noun in the acc. of extent mod. *perspectis;* trans. "as far as his opportunity allowed, seeing that he (*qui* = *cum is*) dare not." —— **audēret** : subjunct. with causal relative (see Grammar).—— **Nave** and **die**: explain the abl. in each case. —— **perspexisset** : subjunct. either of an indirect question (*quae*, interrog. from *quis*) or of a quoted relative clause (*quae* rel. from *qui*).

QUESTIONS IN GRAMMAR

Give prin. parts of *polliceor, permaneo, constituo, hortor, sequor, nūntio, do, egredior, audeo, revertor, perspicio.*

Chapter 22.

Navium parandarum causa : change this to the gerund construction. What limitation to the gerundive in the gen. plur. ? —— **moratur**, vivid present, the regular tense with *dum* = while, where the imperfect would be expected. —— **legati venerunt qui se excusarent** : compare *qui polliceantur* in chap. 21. Note the difference in sequence. —— **de superioris temporis consilio,** "for (concerning) their conduct (policy) in the past." —— **homines** : to be taken as an appositive to the understood subject, "because, (being) uncivilized people . . . they," etc. —— **consuetudinis**, objective gen. mod. *imperiti*, an adj. of *knowledge*. What adjectives are modified by the gen. ? —— **populo** : dat. indirect obj. of *fecissent*. *Bellum tibi infero* is the more usual phrase. —— **fecissent** : why does *quod* take subjunct. here ? —— **imperāsset** = **imperavisset** : subjunct. in a quoted relative clause. Trans. into Latin "We will do what you shall have ordered." Note that the pluperf. subjunct. corresponds in indirect historical sequence to the fut. perf. indic. of direct discourse. —— **pollicerentur**, see *excusarent* above. —— **has tantularum rerum occupationibus**, "these engagements in such trifling affairs"; *tantulus*, diminutive of *tantus ; rerum*, possessive gen. —— **quod volebat** : note *quod* with indic. Why ? Contrast *quod fecissent* above. —— **belli gerendi facultatem** : gerund or gerundive ? —— **Britanniae**: dat., indirect obj. of *anteponendas*, "preferred to Britain." —— **anteponendas** : gerundive of necessity. With *esse* it makes what is called the *passive periphrastic*. —— **eis**

numerum imperat: dat. of person receiving the order, acc. of thing ordered; "demands a large number *from them*" or "levies a large number *upon them.*" —— **in fidem recipit**, "takes them under his protection," "into his keeping." —— **Coactis contractisque**, "gathered up and brought in." —— **quot**, "which number," lit. *as many as.* —— **quod praeterea navium**, etc., "what war ships he had besides"; "all the war ships he had"; *navium*, partitive gen. mod. *quod.* —— **Huc accedebant**: "to these were added," "there were in addition to these." —— **ā millibus**, "at a distance of eight miles." —— **tenebantur quo minus possent**, "were detained and prevented from being able" (see use of *quo minus* in Grammar). —— **ducendum**: gerundive of necessity with *exercitum.* —— **arbitrabatur**: cannot mean "which he (Rufus) might think sufficient" because a relative clause in virtual indirect quotation would require the subjunct. It must mean "which he (Caesar himself) thought sufficient" expressing the bare fact, not as a quotation.

QUESTIONS IN GRAMMAR

1. Principal parts of *relinquo, cogo, jubeo.*
2. Distinguish *accidit* and *accēdit.*

Chapter 23.

nactus: see **nanciscor.** —— **tertiā vigiliā**: abl. of location in time, "somewhere in the course of the third watch," *i.e.* between midnight and 3 A.M. The night (*i.e.* the space between sunset and sunrise, however long or short it might be) was divided into four periods, called "watches." About September 1 each of these would be about three hours long. Only the day — sunrise to sunset — was divided into hours (*hōrae*). —— **ulteriorem portum**: these ports cannot be accurately located, as the whole coast has suffered alterations from the action of the ocean. The main port of embarkation was probably between Boulogne and Calais, and the *portus ulterior* at either Ambleteuse or Calais. —— **se**, "him," the speaker. —— **paulo tardius**, "rather slowly"; compare *tardē.* —— **horā quartā**: about 10 A.M. It had taken about eight or nine hours to sail thirty miles. The point reached was off Dover. —— **expositas**, "drawn up in view." —— **ita montibus anguste**, etc., "so closely was it bordered by mountains." The Ms. reading

angustis ("mountains so close") seems awkward. —— **adigi**: inf. pass. of *adigo*. —— **posset**: what use of the subjunct.? —— **dum . . . convenirent**: *dum* (= until) takes indic. for *fact* and subjunct. for *anticipated possibility*. Here, not "until they actually assembled," but "for them to assemble." —— **horam nonam**: about 3 P.M. —— **cognovisset, vellet**: subjunct. of indirect question, unless these are to be taken as quoted relative clauses, *i.e.* "what (he said) he had learnt." —— **ut rei . . . postularent**: these two *ut*'s = "as"; *postularent* is subjunct. because in a subord. clause quoted in indirect discourse. —— **ut quae**, "as being things which." —— **habērent**, "involved"; same reason for mood as in *postularent*. —— **administrarentur**: to be taken with *monuit* as if *ut* of purpose were expressed before *ad nutum*. —— **litore** seems to be a bare abl. of location (without the usual *in*); it may be explained as an abl. abs.; trans., however, "off an open and level shore." Somewhere near Deal, seven miles north of Dover. —— **his dimissis**: be careful in translating these participles. Write this sentence out as an exercise in Eng. composition. —— **sublatis**: see *tollo*. —— **constituit**: note the different meanings this verb may have.

QUESTIONS IN GRAMMAR

1. Decline *his rebus, ulterior portus primis navibus, cuius loci* (be careful of the plur.), *celer motus, uno tempore* (sing.).
2. Prin. parts of *solvit, attigit, expositas, adigi, tollo.*
3. Trans. *having dismissed this man; having obtained* (nanciscor) *these ships.*

Chapter 24.

cognito . . . praemisso . . . subsecuti: note this chain of participles, "on learning the plan . . . , sent forward cavalry . . . and following up with," etc. —— **genere**: why the case? —— **consuērunt = consuēvērunt**: why the perf.? Distinguish *consuesco* and *consuevi*. —— **copiis**: often explained as abl. of accompaniment without *cum*; really an abl. of means or manner. —— **navibus**: abl. of separation. —— **prohibebant**: note the tense; continuation here means sustained effort, "tried to prevent." —— **has causas**: *has* here points forward. —— **nisi**, "except." —— **militibus** (dat. of agent) . . . **et desiliendum et consistendum erat**: "the soldiers had (both) to leap down, gain a footing, and . . ."; the gerundive

is impersonal. Why? —— **locis, manibus**: abl. abs. —— **oppressis**: dat. agreeing with *militibus*; trans. "the soldiers (being) in ignorance of the locality, with their hands occupied, and (they themselves) being weighed down," etc. —— **illi**, "the enemy," lit. "those others." —— **cum . . . conicerent**: trans. as if *conicicbant*; on what principle does *cum* take the subjunct. here? Where we say "when they *were* hurling," the Latins said, "just about the time when they *would be* hurling"; trans. *cum* here "while." —— **Quibus rebus**: abl. of means with *perterriti*. —— **generis**: gen. depending upon *imperiti*; see *consuetudinis*, chap. 22, line 4. —— **alacritate**: abl. with *utebantur*. —— **quo**: abl. with *uti*; on what principle is *quo* neut. though one of its antecedents (*alacritate*) is fem.?

QUESTIONS IN GRAMMAR

1. What adjectives are modified by the gen.?
2. What verbs appear to "govern" the abl.? What is the real relation?
3. What is the usual Latin mode of expressing the agent with the passive voice? What exception?
4. Decline *grave onus, eadem alacritas, pedestre proelium*.

Chapter 25.

Quod ubi: Eng. cannot use a rel. pron. here; trans. "when C. observed *this*." Note the Latin tendency to introduce a sentence with a rel. —— **naves longas**: obj. of *jussit*. —— **et species**: *et* = "both." —— **inusitatior** may be rendered (1) "rather strange" or (2) "more strange" (than that of the *onerariae*). —— **barbaris**: dat. of interest mod. *inusitatior*. —— **usui nostris**: what construction? —— **pedem rettulerunt**, "fell back," "retreated" (of a short space). —— **qui . . . aquilam ferebat**, "(he) who," "(the one) who." —— **ut . . . eveniret**: verbs of *asking, persuading, warning, exhorting, commanding* (except *jubeo*), take an object noun clause of purpose. —— **legioni**: dat. of interest with *feliciter*. Explain the other datives in this sentence. —— **Cum dixisset**: cite the rule for *cum* (when) with the subjunct. —— **inter se**, "one another." —— **ne . . . admitteretur**: see note above on *ut . . . eveniret*. —— **Hos**: trans. as if it read *cum hos conspexissent*. Why is *hos* put first? —— **hostibus**: what case does *appropinquo* govern?

QUESTIONS IN GRAMMAR

1. Decline *species inusitatior, lătus apertum, miles cunctans, vox magna, tantum dĕdecus.*

2. Prin. parts of *verto, moveo, constituo, consisto, pello, propello, refero, cunctor, do, prodo, desilio, praesto.*

Chapter 26.

Pugnatum est: note this impersonal construction instead of *pugnaverunt utrique.* —— **utrisque**: why plur.? —— **atque**: supply *quod.* —— **alius aliā ex navi,** "one from one ship, another from another" (lit. "a different man from a different ship"). —— **occurrerat, adgregabat**: sing. because *alius* is sing.; trans. in the plur. —— **aliquos,** "any" in the sense of "some." —— **ubi . . . conspexerant, . . . adoriebantur**: this combination of tenses is significant. The pluperf. in the "when" clause gives the meaning of repetition, "whenever," etc. This sense is strongly marked in the imperf. of the main clause, "whenever they saw, they *would* attack." *Ubi* in this connection is exactly like *cum* with the same combination of tenses; contrast with this *ubi conspexerunt* = *cum conspexissent,* "when they saw (once)." See *ubi animadvertit,* chap. 25, line 1. —— **impeditos,** "(these) hampered (men)," or "hampered as they were." —— **ab latere aperto,** "*on* the exposed side," the right side because the shield was carried in the left hand; *ab* here denotes the quarter *from* which the thing is viewed. —— **universos**: disting. from *omnes.* —— **coniciebant,** "kept hurling." —— **quod cum animadvertisset**: cf. *quod ubi animadvertit,* chap. 25, "when he observed (once)." —— **quos . . . conspexerat . . . submittebat**: note the same combination of tenses as above with *ubi* = "whenever"; "whomsoever he saw (from time to time), to these he *would* send." His *noticing* and *ordering* took place *once*; but after that he *repeated* the act of *sending.* —— **simul** = *simul atque,* conj., "as soon as." —— **suis**: abl. abs. —— **neque potuĕrunt,** "*but* they were *not* able"; *neque* often has this adversative force (= *sed non*). —— **longius,** "any great distance." —— **potuĕrant**: bring out the exact force of this tense as compared with the preceding *potuĕrunt.* —— **Hoc unum . . . defuit,** "C. lacked this one thing to complete his usual (old-time) good fortune"; *Caesari,* dat. of interest with *defuit.*

QUESTIONS IN GRAMMAR

1. Prin. parts of *insisto, occurro, adorior, compleo.*
2. Gender of *species, magnitudo, ōrdo, res, dies, virtus, onus, motus, alacritas, navis, altitudo, legio, litus, dēdecus.*

Chapter 27.

Quae imperāsset (= *imperāvisset*): subjunct. of a quoted subord. clause. Direct discourse would have the fut. perf. indic. Trans. into Latin "We will do what you shall have ordered." —— **Hunc illi . . .** : *hunc* is the obj. of *comprehenderant, illi* the subject; *egressum* modifies *hunc;* trans. "Him on disembarking they had seized and cast into chains, though (*cum*) he was bringing Caesar's instructions as a messenger"; *cum*, concessive, takes the subjunct. —— **modo**: abl. of *modus*, "after the manner of." —— **ejus rei culpam in multitudinem contulerunt**, "laid the blame of that affair upon the mob." —— **propter . . . petiverunt**: "owing to their thoughtlessness asked to be pardoned," *i.e.* because it was not intentional wrongdoing. —— **Caesar questus . . .**: do not trans. literally. Write the simple facts in Caesar's order. Then put together in a good Eng. sentence, something like this: "C. complained because after sending . . . and seeking . . ., they had . . . but said . . . ." —— **obsides imperavit**, "demanded hostages"; what would *obsidibus imperavit* mean? Substitute a clause telling what C. demanded. —— **arcessītam** modifies *partem*. Trans. "when summoned." —— **diebus**: abl. of time *within which*, really *location of time*. —— **daturos**: supply *esse*. —— **suos**, "their men."

Chapter 28.

post diem quartum quam est ventum: trans. "four days after Britain was reached"; *post diem quartum quam* to be taken as = *die quarto postquam*. The phrase *post diem quartum* is treated as a comparative followed by *quam* ("than"). Note the impersonal *est ventum*. The passive is purposely vague as regards "who reached?" —— **leni vento**: described as an abl. of accompaniment or attending circumstance; this, however, is only another way of designating here the abl. abs., which is really an abl. of the situation; trans. "in a gentle breeze." —— **solverunt**, "cast off,"

"weighed anchor." —— **cum adpropinquarent**: consider the reason for the subjunct. —— **ut nūlla posset**: why subjunct.? —— **earum**: what kind of gen.? —— **aliae . . . aliae**, "some . . . others." —— **referrentur**: subjunct. coörd. with *posset*. —— **propius occasum**: notice that the adv. here has the power to govern an acc. —— **magno sui periculo**, "at great peril to themselves"; **sui**, shading between a possessive and an objective gen.; **periculo**, abl. of the situation, circumstance or manner. —— **tamen**: this marks the adversative idea that the danger was not realized, for they escaped to the continent; trans. "These, however, cast anchor, but when (or since) they were being filled by the waves, they were compelled to put to sea in the face of the night, and so made for the mainland." —— **adversā nocte**: abl. abs., "the night being against them," as when we say "in the teeth of the storm."

Principal parts of *co-orior, proveho, jacio, peto.*

Chapter 29.

accidit ut: notice the noun clause of weakened result, acting as subject of *accidit*. —— **consuēvit**: why perf.? —— **quibus**: abl. of means. —— **transportandum curaverat**, "had had the army transported"; *transportandum*, a gerundive of necessity, "looked after the army as one *to be transported*." Trans. into Latin "He will get a ship built." —— **Compluribus . . . facta est**: "when several ships had been wrecked and the rest — owing to the loss of ropes, etc. — were useless for sailing, great uneasiness (as was inevitable) arose throughout the army." Notice the flexibility of the Latin period as regards parentheses. —— **totīus exercitūs**: subjective gen. with *perturbatio = totus exercitus perturbatus est*. —— **Neque enim**: trans. *neque* as *non*. —— **quibus . . . possent**: subjunct. of *result* following the relative of *characteristic* (= *ut eis*): "no ships of such a kind that in them they *would be able* to be carried back." Ignore this in translating, "no ships in which they could." —— **usui**: dat. of purpose or tendency. —— **omnibus**: dat. of interest with *constabat*. —— **constabat**, impersonal verb, "it was agreed," or "well known"; subj. is *oportere*, of which the subj.

is the impersonal *hiemari*; a chain of impersonals, "it was well known that it behooved that the winter should be passed." Trans. "it was clear to every one that the winter ought to be passed in Gaul." —— **in hiemem**, "*for* the winter."

Principal parts of *frango*, *deligo* (bind) — disting. from *deligo* (choose).

Gender of *nox, aestus, facultas, funis, hiems, pax.*

Chapter 30.

Quibus rebus . . . : this long sentence should be translated carefully. Do not render the participles and *cum* clauses literally; break the sentence into three, dividing at *conlocuti* and *producere* and rendering *quod* by "for," thus: "On learning . . ., the chieftains . . ., who . . ., held a conference. When they saw . . ., and learned. . . they thought it best to renew the war, cut off our men . . . and prolong . . . . For they felt sure . . . ." —— **Romanis**: what kind of dat.? Give the rule for prepositional compounds of *sum*. —— **militum, castrorum**: classify these genitives. —— **hōc**: adv. of degree mod. *angustiora*, "all *the* smaller"; or abl. of cause, "by reason of this." —— **factu**: see Grammar on supines. —— **duxerunt**: secondary meaning of *duco*, "think, deem." —— **frumento**: abl. of separation with *prohibēre*. —— **his superatis**: render as a condition = *si hi superati essent*. —— **reditu**: see *frumento* above. —— **transiturum**: supply *esse*, subj. *neminem*.

QUESTIONS IN GRAMMAR

1. Describe the uses of the two supines.

2. **belli inferendi causa**: give *three* equivalents: 1, *ad*; 2, *ut*; 3, supine (justify the supine).

3. Principal parts of *loquor, intellego, claudo, intercludo, infero, confido* (name the semi-deponents), *discedo*.

4. What is the adj. for *nemo*? State peculiarities of declension in both.

Chapter 31.

ex eventu navium, "from what had happened to the ships." —— **ex eo, quod**, "from the fact that"; *eo*, abl. of *id*, "this, namely, that," etc. (*quod* a subord. conj. introducing a noun clause). What

is the relation of the noun clause? —— **fore** = *futurum esse*, subj. *id;* here *quod* is the rel. pron. —— **suspicabatur,** "began to suspect"; the imperf. sometimes has this force. —— **comparabat, conferebat,** etc.: what do these imperfects picture? —— **materiā, aere**: why abl.? —— **quae . . . naves, earum**: lit. "what ships . . ., of these"; say "the timber and bronze of those ships which." Note the Latin tendency to put the rel. clause first and include the antecedent noun in it, followed by a demonst. pron. —— **ad reliquas reficiendas**: give the *causā* construction. Which is the neater? —— **usui**: dat. What use? See chap. 20. —— **cum** = "when," with *administraretur.* —— **summo studio**: abl. of manner, or, possibly, of accompaniment. See Grammar for omission of *cum* with the latter. —— **reliquis**: abl. of means with *navigari.* —— **ut navigari posset effecit**: "made it possible for the voyage to be made"; the *ut* clause is a noun clause of weakened result, obj. of *effecit; navigari* is impersonal.

Decline *aes*, copper, and *aĕr*, air. Note their gender.

Chapter 32.

geruntur = *gerebantur.* What is the rule for *dum*, "while"? See chap. 22. —— **frumentatum**: supine. Which? What use and with what restriction? —— **septima**: what is the case construction in Eng. and Latin with *passive verbs of naming, making,* etc.? —— **cum,** "since." —— **ventitaret**: frequentative verb from *venio.* —— **in statione,** "on guard." —— **quam consuetudo ferret,** "than usual," lit. "than custom warranted or *bore.*" Why subjunct. *ferret* and *fecisset?* Give the Latin direct discourse of what the messengers would say to Caesar. Observe the operation of sequence in this. —— **consilii**: partitive gen. with *aliquid*, "some new plan." —— **aliquid initum (esse)**: this phrase is in apposition to *id.* —— **secum**: *se* refers to Caesar, the speaker referred to in *jussit.* Express in Latin the command in Caesar's own words. —— **processisset**: the ordinary pluperf. subjunct. with *cum*, "when," (=Eng. pluperf. indic.); lit. *just about the time when he would have,* etc. Ignore this of course in translating. —— **suos,** "his own men." —— **premi, sustinēre, conici**: bring out the exact force of these present infinitives. —— **Nam quod,** etc., "for because, as all the grain had been harvested from the other parts, there was only one

part left"; *frumento* is abl. abs. —— **delituerant**: do not overlook the tense. —— **tum dispersos** . . . : the translating of these participles is a good exerercise in Eng. composition. First write down the several facts as simple sentences in the order of the Latin, then express in a properly connected Eng. sentence. Notice the agreement of each participle: *dispersos* and *occupatos* with object of *perturbaverant; adorti* with subject; *interfectis* with abl. abs. *paucis*. —— **equitatu**: what two constructions may *circumdo* have?

Principal parts of *appello* (call), *appello* (or *adpello*) (bring a ship to port), *maneo, suspicor, suspicio, confercio, meto, delitēsco, adorior.*

Chapter 33.

per omnes partes: "in all directions." —— **terrore equorum**: if this means "the terror inspired by the British horses," *equorum* is *subjective* gen. = *equi* (*Romanos*) *terrent*; if it means "the terror caused the Roman horses," it is *objective* gen. = *equos* (*Romanorum*) *terrent*. Probably the former, as *rotarum* is certainly *subjective*, and besides the Romans were fighting practically without horses. Some take *equorum*, applied to the British horses, as *objective*, as if *terreo* meant "I fear." —— **pedibus**, "on foot," abl. of manner. —— **si illi premantur**: note the conditional force of the pres. subjunct.; the *ideal* or *vague* future, "if the others *should be* hard pressed." Look up the Grammar on conditional sentences. —— **habeant**: what use of the subjunct.? Note the sequence. —— **expeditum receptum**, "a ready retreat." —— **praestant**: note the two meanings of *praesto*: 1. intrans. "stand at the head of, surpass, excel, be better"; 2. trans. "cause to stand forth, exhibit, display." —— **brevi** (*spatio*), "within a short space." —— **consuērint** = *consuēverint*, perf. subj. of result, after *tantum efficiunt uti*.

QUESTIONS IN GRAMMAR

1. Decline *ipse terror, magnus strepitus, multi aurigae, declivis locus* (sing. and plur.), *usu cotidiano, breve spatium, longus tēmo.*
2. Give rule for gender of masculine nouns in third decl.
3. Principal parts of *curro, flecto, praesto.*

Chapter 34.

Quibus rebus: abl of *means*, mod. *perturbatis*. —— **perturbatis nostris**: either dat. with *auxilium tulit* or abl. abs. —— **novitate**: abl. of *cause*, "owing to the novel mode of fighting." —— **adventu**: abl. of *location of time* or *time when*. —— **alienum** (*tempus*), "unfavorable" (lit. "another person's"). —— **suo loco**: the usual *in* is omitted. —— **geruntur**: note the tense with *dum*. See chaps. 22 and 32. —— **qui erant in agris reliqui**, "the rest (of the Britons) who were in the fields." —— **continuos dies**: acc. of extent of time. —— **quae continērent**: rel. of *characteristic* and subjunct. of *result*, "such as to keep," lit. "which would keep"; *quae = tales ut eae*. —— **sui liberandi**: trans. as if *se liberandi*; "of freeing themselves"; *sui* with the gerundive in the singular may be explained by the fact that the so-called reflexive form *sui*, commonly translated "themselves," is really the neut. sing. gen. of *suus, a, um*, meaning "their own personality." —— **si expulissent**, "if they once expelled"; the pluperf. subjunct. here does not express "contrary to fact"; it is the indirect historical sequence for fut. perf. indic. of direct discourse. Trans. into Latin "a great opportunity will be given us, if we expel" (*shall have expelled*). —— **daretur**: why subjunct.?

QUESTIONS IN GRAMMAR

1. Principal parts of *consisto, lacesso, praedico (are), praedico (ere), pello, expello, cogo, venio*.
2. Gender of *dies, res, tempestas, pars*.

Chapter 35.

ut effugerent: noun clause of weakened result, in apposition to *id*. —— **si essent pulsi**: pluperf. subj. for fut. perf. indic. of direct discourse; see *expulissent*, chap. 34. —— **tanto spatio**, "over as much ground," a rare use of the abl., where one would expect the *acc. of extent*. It may be identified with the abl. of the *route over which* or *way by which*, which is rather common. See Hale and Buck's Latin Grammar, 426, b. —— **Quos**, the obj. of *secuti*: "Having followed these as far as their speed and strength would permit."

QUESTIONS IN GRAMMAR

1. Principal parts of *video*, *fugio*, *nanciscor*, *constituo*, *verto*, *occido*, *occido*, *caedo*, *cado*, *cedo*, *incendo*.
2. Compare *diu*, *longē*, *lātē*, *grăviter*, *bĕnĕ*.
3. Distinguish meanings of *vis* (sing). aud *vires* (plur.).

Chapter 36.

His : dat. of interest with *duplicavit*. —— **die** : abl. abs., denoting cause, "as the day of the equinox was at hand, and his ships were weak"; why *die* fem. (see Grammar)? —— **hiemi** : dat. indirect obj. of *subiciendam*. —— **quae** = *et eae*, trans. "and his ships" because *naves* is omitted in rendering *naves solvit*, "cast off." —— **incolumes**, "unharmed"; disting. from *tutus*, "safe" (before the event). —— **delatae**, see *defero*.

Chapter 37.

cum essent expositi : the common pluperf. subjunct. after *cum*, "when"; trans. as indic.; see note on *processisset*, chap. 32. —— **contenderent** : note sharply the change in tense; also reason for subjunct. (See previous note.) —— **proficiscens**, **pacatas** : a good example of the difference between the so-called pres. and the perf. participle. —— **non ita magno numero**, "with not so large a number" (as afterwards appeared on the scene); *numero*, abl. of *manner* or *circumstance*; there is no need of supplying the sense of *cum*, "together with"; in fact, it might be explained as abl. abs. or abl. of the *situation*. —— **si nōllent** : historical indirect in a quoted subord. clause, for pres. indic. of direct discourse; trans. into Latin "lay down your arms if you do not wish yourselves to be killed." —— **sese** here does not denote the speaker, but is closely reflexive to its own verb. —— **orbe facto** : the *orbis* or hollow circle, with officers and baggage in the centre, corresponded to the modern hollow square. It was a desperate measure in case of attack from all sides. Note the gender of *orbis*. —— **ad clamorem**, "in response to the outcry"; *hominum* belongs to *millia*. —— **suis auxilio** : double dat.; see chap. 20. —— **amplius horis** = *amplius quam horas*, acc. of extent of time; *amplius*, *plus* and *minus* may omit *quam* without disturbing the case. Here the usual change to the abl. is made. ——

occidērunt : what difference in meaning between this and *occīdērunt?* —— **Postea quam** : to be taken as a conjunctive phrase, "after."—— **vero** marks the contrast between the desperate but successful *defence* of the Romans and their *relief.* Notice that *magnus numerus* is evidently intended as a stronger expression than *complures.*

Principal parts of *caedo, cado, occido, occīdo, verto.*

Chapter 38.

rebellionem : note that this is not best translated *rebellion,* but "renewal of war"; *rebellionem facio* = "I renew the war." —— **siccitates** : it is not common to find an abstract noun in the plur.; trans. as sing. —— **quo reciperent** = (*aliquem locum*) *ut eo reciperent,* "a place to retreat"; *quo* (adv.) = *ut eo* is a rel. of characteristic followed by the subjunct. of *purpose.* —— **habērent** : subjunct. of cause after *cum.* —— **quo perfugio** : modifier of *erant usi.* —— **anno** : abl. of *time when.* —— **constituo** : review the different meanings of this verb. —— **Eo** : adv. —— **ex litteris**, "in pursuance of a despatch from Caesar"; note the meanings of *littera* in sing. and plur.; *ex* here suggests the idea of a *result growing out of* something. —— **supplicatio** : "thanksgiving." The ceremony was really a *humiliation* before the gods; lit. "a bending of the knee," and at times meant *supplication* for delivery from distress. It was usually a three days' cessation from business, but on special occasions the time might be increased. The people each day went in solemn procession to the temples of the gods, whose images were taken down and placed, as though banqueting, before richly spread tables. On this occasion it was a political triumph for Caesar, secured by his friends in the face of bitter opposition from his enemies in the Senate.

CAESAR, DE BELLO GALLICO

NOTES

BOOK V

Chapter 1.

ut . . . consuērat (= *consuēverat*): what does *ut* with the indic. mean? —— **legatis imperat uti naves aedificandas curent,** "orders the lieutenants to see to the building of ships"; see Grammar on Noun Clauses of Purpose with verbs of *asking*, *commanding*, etc. Note this use of the gerundive with *curo* in a causative or factitive sense, "get a thing done." —— **quam plurimas possint,** "as many as they possibly can," more emphatic than *quam plurimas.* —— **possint,** subjunct. because in a subord. clause virtually quoted in indirect discourse. —— **modum formamque,** "style and shape." —— **subductionesque**: some read *subductionisque*. The former is acc. plur. governed by *ad* ("for the purpose of beaching them"); the latter is gen. sing. depending upon *celeritatem* ("quickness in beaching"). —— **facit humiliores**: sc. *eas.* —— **quam quibus** as though *quam eas quibus*, *quibus*, abl. with *ūtī.* —— **id** (*facit*) **eo magis,** "this (he does) the more"; *eo*, adv. of degree. —— **minus magnos,** *minus* adv. of degree. —— **fieri**: give the exact force of the tense. —— **ad onera** (*transportanda*) **ac multitudinem transportandam,** "for transporting cargoes and the large number of baggage-animals"; *transportandam*, gerundive, agrees with the nearer noun *multitudinem*, but belongs in sense also to *onera.* —— **paulo latiores** (*eas facit*). —— **Has actuarias imperat fieri,** "these he orders to be built as rowing-vessels"; *actuarias*, objective pred. adj.; *impero* commonly takes *ut* and subjunct., but in the passive the inf. phrase may be used. —— **quam ad rem** = *ad quam rem.* —— **multum**: adv., really acc. of extent. —— **adportari iubet**: compare with the construction of *imperat.* —— **vastari**: note the tense. —— **audiebat**: note the tense. —— **civitatibus milites imperat**: see note on *obsides imperat*, Book IV, chap. 27; "levies soldiers

upon the states" or "demands soldiers *from* the states": dat. of the *person receiving the command* and acc. of the *thing ordered.* —— **qui doceant**: note the mood; subjunct. of *purpose* after the rel. of *characteristic;* "send envoys *to inform* him." —— **publico consilio,** "by public consent" or "as a matter of state policy." —— **demonstrant**: indic. of fact, but *demonstrent* would be subjunct. of purpose with *qui.* —— **paratos facere,** "ready to make," a use (rare in Latin) of the complementary inf. with an adj. —— **omnibus rationibus,** "by every method," lit. "all means." —— **ad certam diem,** "*by* a definite day." —— **fecerint**: perf. subjunct. because in a quoted subord. clause, primary sequence; the direct discourse would call for the fut. perf. indic., "unless you shall have done so." —— **arbitros dat**: "appoints judges" or "arbitrators." —— **qui aestiment**: note the subjunct., "to estimate the damages and fix the penalty." What would historical sequence call for here?

Chapter 2.

Eo cum venisset . . .: observe the following outline in translating: *Eo cum venisset, omnia hibe circumivit atque, singulari militum studio, sescentas (naves) ejus generis cujus . . . et longas (naves) viginti octo instructas (esse) invēnit,* "on arriving there, he made the rounds of all the winter camps, and found that through the extraordinary zeal of the soldiers," etc. —— **singulari studio**: abl. of cause or means. —— **in,** "in the midst of." —— **cujus** = *cujus generis naves;* trans. as if *quod.* —— **supra demonstravimus**: in chap. 1, the *humiliores et latiores actuarias.* —— **abesse ab eo, quin . . .**: lit. "were not far from this, but that they might be launched in a few days"; say "were within a little of being in a position to be launched in a few days." Even this is overloaded as compared with ordinary Eng. "they were within a few days of being ready for launching." —— **quin**: see Grammar on Subjunctive Uses of *quin* with certain *negative* expressions of *doubting, hindering, lacking,* etc. —— **paucis diebus**: abl. of time *within which.* —— **negotio**: dat. with *praefuerant.* —— **quid velit**: subjunct. of an indirect question. —— **trajectum**: noun = "crossing," "passage across." —— **millium**: gen. of description with *trajectum;* *passuum,* partitive gen. depending upon *millium.* —— **Huic rei**: dat. of purpose; "for this purpose." —— **quod satis esse . . .**:

"what seemed to be sufficient soldiers"; *militum*, partitive gen. depending upon *satis*. —— **legionibus expeditis**: see Introduction, under Baggage.

Chapter 3.

plurimum valet, "is the strongest"; *plurimum*: adv., really acc. of extent. —— **Galliae**: partitive gen. —— **equitatu**: abl. of specification. —— **ex quibus alter**, "of these the one," *i.e.* Cingetorix; this *alter* would naturally be followed by another = "the other"; but *Indutiomarus* is used instead. —— **simul atque**, "as soon as." —— **in officio futuros** (*esse*), "would be loyal." —— **neque** = *et non*. —— **defecturos**, "fall away from (or desert) the friendship of the Roman people." —— **gererentur**: subjunct. of an indirect question. —— **At Indutiomarus . . .**: observe the following order: *at Indutiomarus equitatum . . . cogere instituit bellumque parare iis abditis . . .*, "But Ind. determined to collect cavalry and infantry and prepare for war, hiding in the . . . (which with vast extent, etc.) all those who . . . ." —— **ingenti magnitudine**: abl. of manner mod. *pertinet*. —— **et familiaritate . . .**, "both by their intimacy with"; *Cingetorigis*, gen. of possession, "the close connection *of* C. (with themselves)." The outline of this sentence is as follows: *sed posteaquam principes venerunt et . . . petere coeperunt* (*quoniam . . . vererentur*), *Indutiomarus* (*veritus . . .*) *mittit*; "After several chieftains came . . . and began . . ., Ind., fearing . . . sent . . ." —— **Sese . . .**: supply "saying" before this. —— **idcirco**, "for the following reason," referring to the *quo* clause. —— **noluisse**: note the tense; compare with *nolle*. —— **ad eum** = *ad Caesarem*. What would he say in addressing C.? —— **quo facilius** (*quo* = *ut eo*), "that he might the more easily"; see Grammar on *quo*, of purpose, with comparatives. —— **in officio contineret**, "keep the state loyal." —— **ne**, "for fear lest." —— **omnis nobilitatis discessu**, "through the withdrawal of all the nobility"; *discessu*, abl. of cause. —— **esse civitatem**: acc. and inf. continuing his statement, "that consequently," etc. —— **sese**: Ind. himself, the speaker. —— **ad eum**, "to Caesar." —— **si permitteret**: historical indirect for fut. indic. of direct discourse.

Trans. into Latin: "The state is under *my* control and *I*, if *you will permit*, will come to *you* and intrust *my* own fortunes and those of the state to *your* keeping."

Chapter 4.

Caesar, etsi: *Caesar* is the subject of *jussit*. To avoid this long gap between subject and verb, say, "although C. knew." —— **dicerentur, deterrēret**: note the tense; why the mood? —— **ab instituto consilio**, "from his original purpose." —— **omnibus . . .**, "when all things . . . ." —— **in iis**, "and among them." —— **filio**: abl. abs. continuing, or repeating, the construction of *his adductis*. —— **consolatus . . .**, "he consoled Ind. and urged him to . . ."; the *uti* clause is a noun clause of weakened purpose, obj. of *hortatus est*. —— **quod** ("which") . . .: trans. "this he both knew to be done by him in accord with this man's merits, and he thought . . . ." —— **cum . . . tum . . .**, "both . . . and . . . ." —— **merito**: abl. of cause. —— **magni interesse**, "it to be very important"; *magni* (*pretii*), gen. of value; look up Grammar on *interest* and *refert*. —— **valere**: this inf. phrase is the subject of *interesse;* "that the influence of the man (*ejus*) whose remarkable good will . . ., should be as great as possible. . . ." —— **perspexisset**: subjunct. because the subord. clause is really *quoted* in indirect discourse from Caesar's thought. —— **Id factum . . .**, "at this fact Ind. was annoyed; namely, that his influence should be lessened"; the phrase *gratiam minui* is in apposition to *id factum*. —— **qui . . . fuisset**: *qui = cum is* (causal rel.), hence subjunct.: "*whereas* he had already been of an unfriendly spirit towards us." —— **animo**: abl. of description; see Grammar. —— **hoc dolore**: abl. of cause, "owing to this resentment, his anger became much more inflamed." —— **exarsit**: from *exardesco*.

Principal parts of *tango, dēsero, consulo, lābor, exardesco?*

Chapter 5.

portum Itium: see map of Gaul. —— **eodem**: adv., "to the same place." —— **omnibus rebus**: abl. of specification, "in all respects," or abl. of means, "with all things." —— **Eodem convenit**: notice that Latin says "assemble *to* a place," where we say "assemble

at." —— **quorum . . . perspexerat**: does this denote the *fact* stated independently by the narrator, or *part of the quoted thought* implied in *decreverat?* How would these two be distinguished in Latin in this subord. clause? —— **decreverat**: see verb *decerno.* —— **abesset**: historical indirect for fut. ind. of direct. He would say to himself, "I fear an uprising when I *shall be* absent." —— **Galliae**: is this a possessive or an objective gen.?

Principal parts of *reverto, decerno, instruo.*

Chapter 6.

unā cum, "along with." —— **in primis**: adv. phrase = "particularly," "especially"; lit. "among the foremost." —— **rerum, imperii**: objective genitives with adj. of *desire;* see Grammar on adjectives that are modified by the gen. —— **animi, auctoritatis**: gen. of description, mod. *eum*, "high-spirited and possessing great influence." —— **Accedebat huc quod**: "there was the additional fact that"; the *quod* clause is the subj. of *accedebat.* —— **deferri**: note the tense, not "had been offered"; the offer was still standing. —— **quod dictum**, "this statement"; *dictum*, the neut. of the perf. part. used as a noun. —— **graviter ferebant**, "resented." —— **neque . . . audebant**, "but they had not the courage to send"; *neque*, as often, is adversative here, = *sed non.* —— **Ille**: Dumnorix. —— **primo**, "at first." —— **omnibus precibus**, "by all sorts of entreaties." —— **quod . . . timēret**: not "because he *actually* feared the sea," but "because he alleged he feared." On what principle does *quod* here take the subjunct.? See Grammar. —— **insuetus navigandi**: see note on *cupidum imperii* in this chapter. —— **quod diceret**: a peculiar case of *attraction;* trans. simply "because he said," as if it were *quod dicebat;* it does not mean "because he said he said." —— **religionibus**, "religious considerations," or "scruples." —— **uti remanerent**: noun clause, obj. of *hortatus est* (really a weakened adverbial clause of purpose). —— **territare**: best taken as complement of *coepit* from previous context; so *interponere, poscere* below; although these infinitives may be taken as historical = *territabat*, etc. —— **fieri**, "that not without cause was it happening that"; acc. and inf. governed by the verb of *saying* implied in *territare;* the *ut* clause is a weakened clause of result, acting as a noun, subj. of *fieri.* —— **nobilitate**: abl. of separation.

—— **id esse consilium** . . . : "that this was Caesar's design, to take over into Gaul and kill there all those whom he feared," etc.; notice *traductos necaret* = *traduceret et necaret; ut . . . necaret* is in apposition to *id; vereretur*, verb of a quoted subord. clause. —— **reliquis** : ind. obj. of *interponere*. —— **jusjurandum ut . . . administrarent**, "an oath (to the effect) that they would carry out"; the *ut* clause is in opposition to **jusjurandum**, implying purpose in a weakened way. —— **ex usu**, "of advantage to." —— **intellexissent** : represents a fut. perf. ind. of direct discourse; *quod intellexerimus, administrabimus*. —— **communi consilio** : abl., "by common consent." —— **deferebantur** : note the tense.

Decline *omnis nobilitas, commune consilium, jusjurandum*.

Chapter 7.

quod . . . tribuerat : "because he had so much respect for"; really "had assigned (in his own mind) so much importance to"; *dignitatis*, partitive gen. —— **coercendum** (*esse*) : bring out the full force of the gerundive. —— **posset** : why subjunct.? Supply *coerceri atque deterreri*. —— **prospiciendum** : supply *esse statuebat*. —— **ne quid . . . nocēre posset** : "(precautions should be taken) so that he should be able to do no harm (to prevent him from doing any harm) to himself (Caesar) and the state"; *quid* is adverbial acc. of extent mod. *nocēre;* what verbs govern the dat.? —— **dabat operam ut** : "exerted himself to"; what is the exact meaning of the tense? —— **nactus tempestatem** : why not abl. abs.? —— **impedītis animis** : "when the minds were occupied." —— **retrahi** : account for the infin.; see note on *actuarias fieri*, chap. 1. —— **si vim faciat neque pareat**, "if he offers violence and does not obey," or "if he should offer," etc. The pres. subj. here may be accounted for in two ways: 1. as primary sequence, indirect discourse (implied in *jubet*) or fut. indic., *si faciet neque parebit*, vivid future (see Conditional Sentences); 2. as a vague future. —— **nihil . . . facturum** : "thinking that this man in his (Caesar's) absence would in no way act as a sane person"; *pro*, "in accordance with," "as befits." —— **qui neglexisset**, "seeing that he had ignored" (*qui*, causal rel. = *cum is*). —— **Ille enim** : this implies an ellipsis, "(and in this he was not wrong) for"; compare Greek

καὶ γάρ. —— **civitatis**: pred. gen. of possession, "belonged to a free state." —— **hominem**: here appears to be contemptuous, "the fellow."

Which tenses of *reverto* are usually deponent?

Chapter 8.

His rebus gestis . . .: this sentence is too long to translate literally: turn *relicto* into a verb ("he left Labienus"), and put a period at *solvit*, saying at *ipse* "(while) he himself." Omit *et* (after *solvit*) and translate then, "He was carried on by . . ., but, about midnight the wind dropping, he was stayed in his course and, drifting too far (*longius*) . . ., beheld Br. passed by on his left" (*sub sinistrā*). —— **rei frumentariae**: dat. of purpose, mod. *providēret*. —— **pro**, "according to." —— **pari numero quem**, "the *same* number *as*." —— **ad solis occasum**, "towards sunset"; possibly "toward the West." —— **rursus**, "back again" (= *reversus*). —— **remis contendit ut**, "he rowed hard to." —— **caperet**, "take," "reach"; a seaman would say "make." —— **quā** = *in quā*. —— **egressum**: a noun. —— **aestate**: abl. of time, mod. *cognoverat*. —— **virtus**, "endurance" (lit. "manliness"). —— **qui**, "for they." —— **navigiis**: abl. of means, mod. *adaequarunt*. —— **non intermisso . . .**: here the abl. abs. denotes manner or means; "by not discontinuing." —— **Accessum est . . .**: impersonal passive with *navibus* as abl. of means; trans. "Britain was reached by all the ships about noon." —— **neque**: adversative = *sed non*, "but not an enemy." —— **ut cognovit**: *ut* with indic., what force? —— **manūs**, "bands," "forces." —— **convenissent**: the ordinary pluperf. subjunct. with *cum* of plain time; "just when they would have assembled"; trans. as if indic. In these *when* clauses referring to the past, Latin seemed to represent the *fact* as viewed through the eyes of another, *i.e.* a sort of *oblique* narration, the same as we so often meet in *quoted* subord. clauses. —— **perterritae**: fem. because referring to *magnae manūs*. —— **quae**: antecedent *navium*. —— **privatis** (*navibus*). —— **sui commodi** (*causā*), "for his own convenience." —— **erant visae** (*esse*), "were seen (to be)." —— **discesserant**, "had quit the shore."

Chapter 9.

castris: dat. of purpose, mod. *idoneo.* —— Break up this sentence as follows: "C. landed his army and selected a place . . . . When he learnt . . ., he left . . . to act as . . . and hastened . . ., fearing," etc. —— **consedissent**: why the mood? —— **qui essent**: what use of the rel.? Explain these datives. —— **de tertiā vigiliā**, "in the course of the third watch"; *de* means "at some time taken out of." —— **eo minus**: *eo*, an adv. of degree = "the." —— **navibus**: dat. of interest, mod. *veritus;* disting. *naves vereor* and *navibus vereor.* —— **deligatas**, "fastened"; disting. *deligo, ere*, and *deligo, are.* —— **relinquebat**: be careful of the tense. —— **praesidio navibusque**, "over the guard and the ships"; do not mistake this for the "double dative"; what are the constructions of *praeficio* and *praesum?* —— **Illi**: the enemy. —— **equitatu**: abl. of manner or means. —— **naturā et opere**, "by nature and by art." —— **arboribus succisis**: abl. abs. denoting *means*, "by the cutting down of trees"; *succīsis* from *succīdo.* —— **Ipsi**: the men themselves as opposed to their fortifications. —— **rari**: appositive adj. to *ipsi*, "in scattered parties." —— **ingredi**: complement of *prohibebant;* trans. "from entering" (see Grammar on verbs of *hindering*). —— **testudine facta**: the *testudo* here was a shelter consisting of shields held shingle-fashion overhead and resembling the shell of a tortoise. Sometimes *testudo* was applied to a portable shed, carried about as a shelter to men fighting or working beneath it. —— **aggere adjecto**: a mound made of earth, sods, and any other material that could be carried in baskets or hands and heaped up. —— **eos fugientes**: *eos*, the obj. of *prosequi;* the subject pron. of *prosequi* is not expressed; "C. forbade pursuing them in their flight." —— **et quod . . . et quod**, "both because . . . and." —— **munītioni**: dat. of purpose with *relinqui.*

Principal parts of *relinquo, veto, caedo, succido, consumo.*

Chapter 10.

in expedītionem, "as a flying column"; it meant an army moving rapidly and unencumbered by baggage (see Introduction). —— **aliquantum**: acc. of extent. —— **itineris**: partitive gen. ——

extremi: this is ambiguous; it might mean "the rear of the enemy," or "the rear of the pursuing force just visible from the camp." It is usually taken the latter way. —— **qui nuntiarent**: rel. of purpose. —— **quod . . . subsisterent . . . possent**: the reason here is a quoted one, part of the indirect discourse whose main statements are made by the infinitives *adflictas esse*, etc. —— **esse acceptum**: acc. with inf. because part of the report.

QUESTIONS IN GRAMMAR

1. Decline *litus molle, arbores crebrae, pauca vulnera, is dies, superior nox.*
2. Gender of *navis, funis, vis, tempestas.*

Chapter 11.

in itinere resistere, "defend themselves while on the march," *i.e.* not to discontinue their progress while beating off attacks from the rear. —— **sic ut**, "namely that," a clause of result giving the general conclusion based upon what he saw. —— **amissis . . .**, "although, etc."; the abl. abs. here is concessive. —— **magno negotio**, "at considerable trouble." —— **refici posse**, "capable of being repaired." —— **Labieno**: dat. —— **ut instituat**: clause of weakened purpose, giving the substance of the command conveyed in his letter. It is a noun clause, obj. of *scribit*. —— **possit**: if Caesar wrote *posset*, it would be a rather abrupt change to historical sequence in the midst of a sentence in vivid primary sequence; see *sint* and *instituat*. —— **iis legionibus**: abl.; the legions treated as the means or instrument. —— **sint**: the indic. *sunt* would be a parenthetical explanation of fact, not part of the quoted command. It does not seem natural. —— **multae operae**: gen. of description. —— **commodissimum esse**: the subject is the inf. phrase *naves subduci*, etc.; what is the relation of *naves*? —— **ne nocturnis . . .**: lit. "not even the hours of the night being allowed to intervene for the labor of the soldiers"; trans. "the labor of the soldiers being discontinued not even during," etc.; observe the position of *ne . . . quidem*, inclosing the emphatic word. —— **quas ante** (*reliquerat*), "as (he had left) before." —— **eodem**: adv.; "to the same place." —— **majores . . . convenerant**: read this sentence over rapidly as a study in the flexibility of Latin for purposes of eu-

phony and emphasis. —— **summā imperii bellique administrandi:** "the supreme command and management of the war"; *summā*, here a noun = "sum total." —— **fines**: obj. of *dividit*. —— **quod**: rel. to *flumen*; explain the case of *Tamesis*. —— **millia**: what case? —— **Huic . . . cum reliquis . . .**, "between him and the other states continuous warfare had existed." —— **adventu**: abl. of means with *permoti*. —— **toti bello . . .**: what case? do not translate literally; say, "had appointed him commander-in-chief for the war."

Chapter 12.

quos natos . . .: *quos* is the subject of *natos* (*esse*); the phrase *quos natos* (*esse*) is the subject of *proditum* (*esse*) and makes with it the object of *dicunt*; *ipsi* is the subject of *dicunt*; trans. "who according to their own tradition were born on the island"; another reading *ipsā* would mean "on the island itself." —— **iis nominibus . . .**: lit. "by those names of states"; trans. "by the names of those states." —— **quibus**: abl. of source, mod. *orti*; "from which they were sprung before coming thither"; lit. "from which being sprung they came." —— **illato**: what difference between *bellum infero* and *bellum gero*? —— **Hominum est . . .**: lit. "of people the multitude is boundless"; trans. "the population is vast." —— **Gallicis**: adj.; "Gallic (buildings)," "those of the Gauls." —— **consimilia**: *con* intensifies; "exactly like." —— **ad certum pondus . . .**, "ascertained to be of a definite weight"; lit. "tested to a . . ." —— **pro nummo**: *pro* = "as," "for"; lit. "instead of," "as the equivalent of." —— **Nascitur**, "is produced," or "found." —— **exigua**: contrast Caesar's information with the state of affairs as realized in modern times. —— **aere . . .**: bring out the emphasis; "the copper they use (is) imported." —— **cujusque**, "every"; what kind of gen. is *generis*? —— **ut**, "as." —— **haec**: notice the gender; "these (creatures)." —— **animi voluptatisque causā**, "for fancy and amusement." —— **Loca**: trans. "the climate." —— **frigoribus**: abl. abs., "the cold being less intense."

Gender of *pondus*, *aes*, *fāgus*, *abiēs*, *lepus*, *ānser*, *fās*; plur. of *locus*, *frigus*.

Chapter 13.

triquetra : adj., supply *est*. —— **naturā**, abl. of specification. —— **angulus**, "corner." —— **alter**, "the one"; as opposed to *inferior*, "the lower" (instead of a second *alter*, "the other"). —— **quo** : adv., "whither." —— **appelluntur** : disting. from *appellantur*; "are brought to port," "put in," "call" (of a ship, but not to be confused with *appello*, "I call"). —— **inferior** : Cornwall; does it look south? —— **Alterum** (*latus*), "the second side." —— **vergit**, "tends." —— **ad Hispaniam** : how accurate was C.'s geography? —— **quā ex parte**, "off which side." —— **dimidio minor**, "smaller by half"; *dimidio*, abl. of difference. —— **pari spatio transmissus** : *transmissus* is a noun, "passage across"; *spatio* is abl. of description, mod. *transmissus*. —— **atque** : with expressions of comparison ("same," "equal," "other") *atque* is rendered *as* or *than*, an outgrowth of its meaning *and*; "of the same distance *as*." —— **In hoc medio cursu**, "in the midst of this channel." —— **Mona** : the island Anglesey, still called by its inhabitants "Mon"; not the Isle of Man, which was formerly called Monopia; account for the case of *Mona*. —— **subjectae** (*esse*), "to lie in the way," "to be opposite." —— **dies continuos** : acc. of extent; *noctem* is the subject of *esse*. —— **sub brūmā**: "about the time of the winter solstice" (*bruma* = *brevima* = *brevissima dies*, 22d day of Dec.); notice here *sub* with the abl. denoting *location at rest in time*; not the same as in *sub noctem*, "at the approach of night," acc. of *implied motion*. —— **de eo**, "concerning that." —— **reperiebamus** (imperf.): implies a continued effort to discover. —— **nisi certis** . . ., "except that by accurate water-measurements"; *ex aqua* = "obtained *from* water" by means of the water-clock (clepsydra). —— **ut fert opinio**, "as their opinion has it," "according to their opinion." —— **millium** : gen. of description, mod. *longitudo*; the exact length is 590 Eng. = 610 Roman miles. —— **Tertium** (*latus*), "the third side," *i.e.* the northeast side; C.'s geography is of course slightly astray. —— **angulus . . . spectat**, "the general direction is towards." —— **in longitudinem** : not literally "in length," though translated that way. —— **millia octingenta** : acc. of extent; the true measurement is 550 Eng. = 570 Roman miles. —— **in circuitu** : a departure from the ordinary abl. of specification without a preposition. —— **mil-**

lium, gen. of description, mod. *insula*; *passuum*, partitive gen. mod. *millium*.

Principal parts of two verbs *appello*.

Chapter 14.

a Gallica . . ., "differ much from the Gauls in custom"; lit. "from Gallic custom." —— **frumenta**: plur. = different kinds of grain. —— **quod . . . efficit**: *quod*, rel. pron. —— **hoc**, "on this account," abl. of means. —— **horridiore aspectu**, "of a more dreadful appearance," abl. of description to the subject of *sunt*; the readings *horridiores* and *horribiliores* would make *aspectu* an abl. of specification. —— **capillo**, abl. of description. —— **deni**, "groups of ten"; what class of numeral? —— **eorum**: pred. gen. of possession. —— **habentur**, "are deemed." —— **quo** (adv. whither), "into whose house." —— **deducta**, "married." —— **quaeque**: fem. of *quisque*.

Principal parts of *sero, vivo, differo, rado*.
Decline *lac, caro*.

Chapter 15.

proelio: abl. of manner. —— **tamen ut**, "with the result, however, that." —— **fuerint**, "proved"; perf. denoting the final occurrence. —— **cupidius**, "too eagerly." —— **ex suis**, "of their number." —— **illi**, "the enemy." —— **spatio**, "interval" (of time) —— **nostris**: abl. abs. —— **in eos facto, qui**, "upon those who." —— **duabusque**: omit "and"; say "when two cohorts," etc. —— **subsidio**: dat. of purpose. —— **his primis**: a continuation of the abl. abs. *cohortibus*. —— **spatio**: abl. abs. —— **novo genere pugnae**, "new kind of fighting." —— **incolumes**: disting. from *tutus*. —— **Illi**, "the enemy."

Principal parts of *confligo, compello, consisto, perrumpo*.

Chapter 16.

cum . . . dimicaretur: a causal clause; *dimicaretur* is impersonal. —— **possent, audērent**: subjunct. because the subord. clauses express part of what was perceived, being quoted in virtual indirect discourse; they represent *facts* viewed only as *possibilities* through the eyes of the person quoted as perceiving them. —— **cedentes**,

"fugitives" (lit. "retreating ones"). —— **minus aptos**, "ill adapted"; *minus*, adv. practically = *nōn*. —— **hujus generis**: gen. of description, mod. *hostem*. —— **equites . . . dimicare**: still depending upon *intellectum est*. —— **illi**, "the enemy." —— **consulto**: adv. —— **cederent**: why subjunct.? also *desilirent*, *contenderent*? —— **dispari proelio**: abl. of manner. —— **ratio**, "method." —— **et cedentibus et . . .**, "*both* to those retreating *and* to those pursuing"; we should express this, "brought just the same danger to pursuers *as to* the pursued." —— **par atque idem**: the same in amount and identical in character. —— **Accedebat huc ut**, "there was the additional fact that"; *ut* clause of weakened result, subject of *accedebat*. —— **intervallis**: abl. of manner, or it might be interpreted as abl. abs., both amounting to the same thing in meaning. —— **habērent**, etc.: explain these subjunctives. —— **alios alii**, "one another." —— **integri et recentes**, "unwearied and newly arrived men." —— **defatigatis**: dat., indirect obj.

Chapter 17.

rari: adj. = in scattered parties. —— **lenius**, "less vigorously." —— **sic uti . . .**, "in such a way that they did not keep back from." —— **finem sequendi fecerunt**: trans. freely. —— **subsidio**: *fido* and its compounds govern an abl. of the *thing* relied upon. —— **cum . . . vidērent**: causal, telling *why* they relied. —— **egerunt**: see *ago*, "drive." —— **sui colligendi**: gerundive, mod. *sui*, = *se colligendi*, gerund governing *se* as obj.; see note on *sui liberandi*, Book IV, chap. 34. —— **consistendi, desiliendi**: gerunds. —— **quae undique convenerant auxilia** = *ea auxilia quae*, etc., "those reinforcements which"; lit. "what reinforcements." —— **summis copiis**: abl. of manner, "in full force."

Chapter 18.

ad flumen in fines: notice the Latin idiom: two adverbial phrases of motion, mod. *duxit*, "*to* the river (and) *into* the territories," where we should use one phrase of motion, mod. "led" and an adjectival phrase, mod. "river," "to the river Thames (*i.e.* a place) *in* the territory." —— **quod flumen**, "which river." —— **omnino** here = "only." —— **hoc** = (*in*) *hoc* (*loco*). —— **ad alteram**

ripam, "*on* the other bank," *i.e.* adjoining. —— **ejusdem generis . . . sudes**, "stakes of the same kind." —— **flumine**: abl. of means, mod. *tegebantur*. —— **cognitis a captivis**: *a* = "from." —— **ea celeritate**, "with *such* speed." —— **cum . . . exstarent**, "although only their heads were above water"; what is the literal translation? —— **capite**: abl. of means, just about the same here as the abl. of difference used with comparatives. —— **ut . . . non possent**: result or purpose? What difference in the negative? —— **ripas dimitterent**, "quit the banks."

Principal parts of *ago*, *tego*, *tango*, *figo*, *frango*, *sto*.

Chapter 19.

contentionis, "of keeping up the strife." —— **relictis**, "being left"; trans. "keeping about 4000." —— **servabat**, "preserved"; note carefully the tense. —— **excedebat**, "kept withdrawing." —— **iis regionibus**: abl. of the *route followed* or *way by which*; [illegible] *quibus*; say "in those regions through which." —— **compellebat**: give the tense its value: "would," etc. —— **cum . . . ejecerat . . . emittebat**: see note on these tenses in Book IV, chap. 26; "whenever our cavalry sallied forth . . ., he *would* let loose . . . and engage . . . and (all the while) kept hindering. —— **vagari prohibebat**: complementary inf.; what is the construction with other verbs of *hindering*? See Grammar on *quin* and *quominus*. —— **Relinquebatur ut**, "the result was that." —— **neque . . . et**: take *neque* as = *et non*; "both refused to allow (did not allow) . . . and . . ."; or, better, omit "both." —— **discedi**: impersonal passive; "a departure to be made," or "his men to depart." —— **longius**, "any great distance." —— **tantum noceretur**, "only so much injury was done"; *tantum*, acc. of extent; *noceretur*, impersonal, why subjunct.? —— **in agris vastandis**, "in the way of devastating." —— **hostibus**: dat. with *noceretur*. —— **quantum . . .**, "as the legionary soldiers could accomplish by toilsome marching."

Chapter 20.

Interim Trinobantes . . . : an awkward sentence unless broken up; take out *ex qua . . . vitaverat*, and treat it as a separate sentence after the rest, thus: "meanwhile the T. . . . send envoys

. . . and promise. . . This was the state from which . . . . His father . . ., while M. himself . . . ." —— **fidem secutus**, "espousing the cause of C." —— **petunt ut defendat**, "ask him to protect"; *ut* clause of purpose, obj. of *petunt*. —— **qui praesit**, "some one to be in authority"; rel. of characteristic in a clause of purpose. —— **His imperat obsides**, "upon these C. levies hostages," or "from these he demands hostages"; *his*, dat. of *person* receiving the command; *obsides*, acc. of the *thing* demanded, = *ut obsides darent*. —— **exercitui**: dat. of *interest* or the *person benefited*. —— **ad numerum**, "to the (required) number."

Chapter 21.

militum injuria, "wrong-doing on the part of the soldiers"; *militum*, subjective gen. —— **quo**: adv., "whither," "to which." —— **convenerit**: perf. subjunct. in a quoted subord. clause. —— **satis magnus**, "tolerably large," or "quite a large." —— **contendit**, "hastens"; compare this meaning with that in chap. 17.

Gender of *palus*, *pecus*, *impetus*.

Chapter 22.

Dum . . . geruntur: what idiom in the tense? —— **ad mare** (cf. *ad ripam*, chap. 18), "on the sea," *i.e.* close to the sea; reconcile this with the meaning in *ad Cantium*. —— **regionibus**: dat., indirect obj. of *praeerant*. —— **de improviso**, "unexpectedly" (lit. "from the unforeseen"). —— **imperat uti . . .**: what kind of *uti* clause? —— **Cassivellaunus hoc proelio nuntiato . . .**: an awkward sentence to render into Eng.; say, "Cass., when this battle was reported, as he had sustained so many losses, had had his territories devastated and especially as he was alarmed . . . sent envoys. . . ." —— **neque multum**, "and (since) not much"; *neque* = *et non*. —— **extrahi**: some take this in the sense "wasted," *i.e.* if he remained in Britain; it seems better, however, to take it "spun out" or "employed" (on the continent). —— **quid vectigalis**, "what tribute"; partitive gen. —— **penderet**: dependent deliberative subjunct.; note the sequence. The direct deliberative would be *quid pendat?* "what is it to pay?" —— **interdicit atque imperat**, "cautions and commands"; *interdico* commonly means "restrain" or "forbid." —— **ne noceat**: negative purpose clause as obj.

of *imperat*, "not to," etc.; observe the vivid sequence. —— **neu** = *et ne*, used in purpose clauses; *neque* = *et non* in clauses of fact.

QUESTIONS IN GRAMMAR

1. Distinguish *pendeo* and *pendo*.
2. What case do *praesum* and *noceo* govern?
3. Explain the different constructions of *impero*.

Chapter 23.

quod, "because"; this introduces the reason for returning in two trips. —— **commeatibus**, "divisions," "relays"; abl. of manner. —— **tot navigationibus**: probably abl. abs., "the voyages being so many"; but trans. "in so many voyages." —— **hoc** (*anno*). —— **quae . . . portaret**: subjunct. by *attraction*, because forming part of a result clause and sharing the idea of *tendency* or *possibility*; it may be regarded as a clause of *characteristic* = *talis ut ea*, etc. —— **desideraretur**, "was missing"; lit. "looked for in vain." —— **remitterentur**: certainly the subjunct. by attraction, coming under the result clauses of which *caperent* and *reicerentur* are the verbs. —— **et prioris . . . et quas**: lit. "*both* after landing the soldiers of the first division *and* (those ships) which Lab. had caused to be built"; Eng. requires symmetry in the "both . . . and" clauses: say "*both* those which had landed . . . and those which." —— **prioris**: why not *primi*? —— **numero sexaginta**, lit. "sixty in number"; say "to the number of sixty"; *numero* is abl. of specification. —— **postea** means after C.'s departure for Britain, when Lab. had received news of the storm and C.'s order to build more ships, chap. 11. —— **locum caperent**, "reached their destination." —— **Quas** refers to *reliquae*. —— **ne . . . excluderetur**, "for fear lest . . .," the negative purpose constituting his reason for not delaying longer; it modifies the verb *collocavit*. —— **anni tempora**, "season." —— **collocavit**, "stowed." —— **cum solvisset**: awkward if rendered literally; omit *cum* (= "whereas") and change to a principal clause, beginning a new sentence at *prima luce*. —— **initā vigiliā**: abl. abs., "the watch having been begun"; but render "at the beginning of"; between 9 and 10 P.M. about Sept. 15, 54 B.C.

EXERCISES

CAESAR, BOOK IV

NOTE. — The object of writing Latin is to ensure accurate knowledge of the language, partly for the purpose of mental training and partly with a view to future reading. No study is of value unless pursued in the scientific spirit, and scientific study means: —

1. The accurate and painstaking observation of facts and laws.
2. Careful exercise of the memory.
3. Practical application, or the obtaining of results through the individual efforts of the student. In natural science this is called laboratory work. In its elementary stage it does not consist in making new or startling discoveries, but in learning to handle materials.

Applied to Latin this "laboratory work" is to be found in the reconstructive process known as Latin Composition. It serves the purpose of mental drill and fixes the facts of the language clearly in the mind for future use. A finished Latin style is the result of years of study and practice. For the university matriculant the best results can be obtained by concentrating on *vocabulary* and *grammar as applied to sentence structure*. Continuity and gracefulness of style must be left to a more advanced stage.

Chapter 20

Word Review. — 1. summer, winter, north, aid, approach, island, coast, harbor, kind, practice, trader. —— 2. small, early, suitable, remaining, known, unknown, maritime, how large, so large. —— 3. set out, hasten, wage war, inhabit, find out, use, visit, fail or fall short, know, think, learn, discover. —— 4. almost, only, still, although, either, or, neither, nor, and.

Exercise. — 1. How large are the ships? 2. The harbors are not so large. 3. He thinks the ships are large. 4. He will not find out how large the place is. 5. It will be of great service to me if only I visit (fut. perf.) these regions. 6. Nor are any harbors suitable. 7. He knows the harbors are not suitable. 8. In larger ships. 9. Except this island. 10. In this war. 11. In this summer. 12. They use suitable harbors. 13. What ships have they? 14. We do not know what ships they have

in this harbor. 15. He discovered that the island was larger. 16. When he had visited it (the island).

Chapter 21

Word Review. — 1. ship of war, forces, passage across, fleet, plan, state, envoy, hostage, military sway, opinion, valor, influence, faith, opportunity. —— 2. make a venture, send ahead, send back, enjoin, return, order, assemble (intrans.), carry (news), submit to (obey), urge (exhort), overcome, appoint, esteem highly, follow, investigate, announce, disembark (intrans.), dare, observe (examine). —— 3. Meanwhile, as soon as possible, there, thence, previous summer, through envoys, I make liberal promises.

Exercise. — 1. Having learnt these things. 2. For the purpose of learning this (*causā*). 3. This warship is not suitable for making the venture. 4. He promised to investigate all things. 5. I shall return to you after five days. 6. I enjoin upon you to return (that you return) to me. 7. The large fleet which had been built assembled. 8. Several states having sent ambassadors promise many things. 9. Having given hostages, they will not send aid to the Gauls. 10. The envoys who had promised these things were sent back home by Caesar. 11. The influence of the king who is faithful to me is highly esteemed by the Roman people. 12. Visit what states you can (shall be able); bid them be faithful to me, and tell them I shall soon (in a short time) be on their island. 13. They dare, since they dare, they have not dared.

jubeo, impero, hortor

1. I bid you return (1. *jubeo*, 2. *impero*).
2. He commands him not to disembark (*impero*).
3. He will urge them to give hostages.
4. He ordered ships to be built (1. *jubeo*, 2. *impero*).
5. They urged him to return.

Chapter 22

Word Review. — 1. conduct (policy), back, transport (ship), guard, custom. —— 2. prepare, delay, leave, demand, bring (hos-

tages), collect, think, judge, arrive, hold. ——3. previous, so little, unacquainted with (what case?).

Exercise. — 1. Having prepared warships, he will set out. 2. Ships are to be prepared by me. 3. Ships have been prepared by him. 4. The envoys who came promised. 5. Envoys came, who promised. 6. Envoys were sent to promise (1. rel., 2. *ut*, 3. *causā*, 4. supine). 7. Men will come to excuse him. (Omit "men," and say, "There will come who may.") 8. These will come to promise. (Do not use rel. of purpose because the antecedent is not indefinite.) 9. This has happened more opportunely for me. 10. No enemies will be left behind my back, if they give (= shall give) hostages. 11. We shall do all things that you order (fut. perf.) 12. They wished to be excused because they had made war (as a matter of fact). 13. They said they had made war because they were inexperienced in these matters. (Give the rule for subord. clauses in indirect discourse.) 14. I must not put these matters before Britain. 15. You must give hostages. 16. Transports must be collected — have been collected. 17. He commands Rufus to hold these harbors (*impero*). 18. They wish to be excused for having waged war (*quod* giving the reason as a quoted one).

Chapter 23

Word Review. — 1. settle a matter, obtain suitable weather for sailing, third watch, set sail, farther port, embark, disembark, advance, follow. ——2. slow, slowly, a little too slowly, hill, reach, behold, narrow (close), heights, shore, drive a dart, wait. ——3. show, warn, wit, a demand (require), perform, military science, method (system), wind, tide, shore, favorable, give a signal, weigh anchor, moor ships.

Exercise. — 1. He waited that he might obtain suitable weather. 2. When he had settled these things, he set sail. 3. The cavalry, having advanced to the other port, embarked and followed him. 4. He gave orders that they should follow him. 5. He warned them to perform this quickly. 6. What (facts) has Caesar ascertained from the envoy? 7. What do

you wish us to do? 8. I will show you what I have learnt and what I wish to be done by you. 9. Wind and tide are more suitable. 10. They performed everything (say "all things") with speedy and shifting movement. 11. Anchors were weighed promptly (= on time).

Chapter 24

Word Review. — 1. charioteer, usually, remaining forces, battle, man, follow up, prevent. —— 2. On account of, owing to, unknown, obstructed, unobstructed, heavy weight, leap down, gain a footing. —— 3. wave, dry (land), water, urge on, fighting, zeal, am accustomed, unacquainted with, display zeal.

Exercise. — 1. Caesar must send cavalry ahead. 2. The soldiers must disembark. 3. When they had leaped down and steadied themselves in the sea, they advanced to dry land. 4. The locality was unknown, and their hands were obstructed. 5. They leaped down for the purpose of advancing. 6. He ordered them to advance against (*in*) the enemy (who were) hurling darts. 7. They saw that our men were frightened by the darts and horses. 8. He is accustomed to show great quickness in advancing. 9. They did not know why he used that kind of ships. 10. Their zeal is not the same as (= which) they displayed the previous summer. 11. These ships are not the same as I usually employ.

Chapter 25

Word Review. — 1. observe, remove, rout, hesitate, clear away, make a stand, moor (ships), fall back (retreat), betray, perform duty, incur disgrace. —— 2. appearance, movement, exposed (open), loud voice, soldiers in a body, nearest ships, follow up, approach (what case?).

Exercise. — 1. He observed that the appearance of the warships was rather strange to the enemy. 2. Oars were of little use to the transports. 3. He bade his comrades leap down unless they wished (subord. clause in indirect discourse) to betray the standard to the natives. 4. He said that he at any

rate would leap down and carry the standard. 5. Leap down in a body, lest you incur disgrace. 6. Having leaped down, they followed up the standard. 7. The ships approached Britain about the third hour of the day. 8. He exhorted his comrades to leap down. 9. They saw that he was leaping down, and they said *they* would.

Chapter 26

Word Review. — 1. each, both, one from one ship another from another, some, whichever. —— 2. greatly, however, whenever, likewise. —— 3. they fought (impersonal), keep ranks, follow up standards, meet (encounter, fall in with), I attack, make an attack upon. —— 4. exposed side, send support, overtake, put to flight, pursue, man (a boat), dry (place), am lacking.

TEMPORAL CLAUSES

when, whenever, as soon as

Exercise. — 1. When (*cum*) the battle had raged a long time, the enemy were put to flight. 2. Whenever Caesar observed this, he would order the boats to be manned. 3. When (*ubi*) he espied this soldier in distress, he sent him aid. 4. Whenever our men halted, the enemy would make an attack upon them. 5. When they had disembarked, they overtook their comrades. 6. As soon as the enemy were put to flight, he saw that he lacked cavalry. 7. The natives urged their chargers into the water when the Romans were disembarking.

Chapter 27

Word Review. — 1. immediately, meanwhile, then, from all sides, above, of one's own accord. —— 2. recover one's self, bring commands, seize, throw into bonds (imprison), pardon, send for, seek, complain.

INDIRECT DISCOURSE

Accusative with Infinitive

Subordinate Clauses in Indirect Statement

Exercise. — 1. They said they would send the hostages whom they had sent for. 2. He learned that Commius had come. 3. They knew that he was bringing Caesar's commands. 4. They said they were seeking peace because they were hard pressed (*premo*) by war.

Translate (a) in Direct (b) in Indirect Discourse. — 1. We shall give hostages. 2. We shall do all that you order (shall have ordered). 3. I complain because you have waged war upon me. 4. We shall send the rest of the hostages in a few days when they have come (shall have come). 5. They have seized the envoy whom I sent.

Chapters 28 and 29

Word Review. — 1. upper harbor, storm, gentle breeze, spring up (arise), hold one's course, cast anchor, weigh anchor, take on board. —— 2. tide, to wreck, cable, tackle, unseaworthy, material for repairs, lose.

PARTICIPLES

Exercise. — 1. They were seen approaching the island. 2. A storm having arisen, the ships were wrecked. 3. A storm having arisen wrecked the ships. 4. The ships having set out were forced back. 5. All the tackle of the wrecked vessels was lost. 6. Having weighed anchor, they put to sea in the teeth of the storm. 7. The ships wrecked cannot be repaired. 8. It was agreed that the ships ought to be repaired. 9. Great uneasiness having been caused, Caesar repaired a few ships. 10. Having picked up the cavalry, these ships advanced several miles. 11. A storm arose (as) the ships (were) picking up the cavalry. (Write out a scheme of participles for *tollo*.) 12. The tackle of the ships picking up the cavalry was lost.

Chapters 30 and 31

Word Review. — 1. assemble, converse, perceive (know, understand), learn, think (4 verbs), lead, prevent, prolong, overcome, cut off, wage war (offensively), cross, feel sure, form a conspiracy, depart (withdraw), withdraw (trans.), begin. —— 2. discontinue, suspect, lay in resources, gather corn, damage (wreck), repair, manage (perform), lose, to sail, accomplish (a purpose.) —— 3. fewness, scantiness (smallness), narrow (contracted), renewal of war, supplies (provisions), a return, again, gradually, secretly, without (prep.), although, not yet, still (however), what happened to the ships, emergency, daily (adv.), severely, timber, bronze, rest of the ships, utmost zeal.

Exercise. — 1. They lack many things, for the camp in which they are is very small. 2. They decided to renew the war. 3. If Caesar is defeated or cut off from return (abl. abs.), no one will hereafter cross to our island to wage war upon us. 4. He felt sure that they would form a conspiracy. 5. He thought the corn he was collecting would be a support (dat. of purpose) against all emergencies. 6. He obtained timber and copper in Britain. 7. I know the voyage can conveniently be made with these ships. 8. He succeeded in repairing the rest of the ships. 9. In repairing the ships the soldiers exhibited (*utor*) the utmost zeal. 10. Caesar must repair these ships.

Chapter 32

Word Review. — 1. custom, dust, rank, suspicion, I suspect, remain, call (name), gather corn, gate, form a plan, on guard. —— 2. follow up, advance, observe, press, hold out (resist), immediately, far, with difficulty, legion in close array, hide. —— 3. scattered, lay down (arms), engaged, reap, suddenly, attack, rank, throw into confusion, surround. —— 4. at the same time, as soon as, chariot (British), by night, hither, then, for (conj.), hurl darts.

Exercise. — 1. This is the best thing to do (supine). 2. He had sent the seventh legion to collect corn (1. *frumentor*, 2. *frumentum comparo* or *confero*). 3. While the legion was making

its way in that direction, a great dust was seen. (Use *dum* and the vivid present.) 4. Two cohorts having set out with Caesar to bring aid, the rest (were) armed (and) immediately followed them up. 5. He ordered the rest to set out (*impero*). 6. My men are hard pressed, but are bravely holding out and hurling darts. 7. He will surround the camp with soldiers.

Chapter 33

Word Review. — kind (class), at first, noise, wheel, for the most part (usually), squadron, foot, to fight (3), a fight (battle), chariot-driver, chariot (2), ready retreat, agility, steadiness, exhibit (show), practice, daily (adj.), daily (adv.), drill, steep, rein in, control, turn, galloping, tongue (of a chariot), yoke, betake one's self

RESULT

Exercise. — 1. They ride about in such a way as to terrify (*terreo*) the horses. 2. The steadiness of infantry is such that they are able to withstand the attack of many squadrons of cavalry. 3. The place was so (*tam*) steep that they found it difficult to hold in their horses (held in with difficulty).

CONDITIONAL SENTENCES

Classify and translate the following: —

1. If they are hard pressed, they have a retreat.
2. If they should be hard pressed, they would have a retreat.
3. If they were (now) hard pressed, they would have a retreat.
4. If they are hard pressed, they will have a retreat.
5. Had they been hard pressed, they would have had a retreat.

Chapter 34

Word Review. — bring aid, arrival, stand still, recover one's self, fear, fright, join battle, provoke, unfavorable time, follow, storm, in the mean time, send out messengers, herald abroad (proclaim), plunder, forever, free (verb), opportunity, show, gather (forces).

Exercise. — 1. They saw that our men were being disturbed by this circumstance — were (already) disturbed. 2. When aid had been brought by Caesar, the enemy halted. 3. Having joined battle and provoked the enemy, they kept their ground for several hours. 4. How great an opportunity is afforded of freeing our country? 5. They showed what a great opportunity they had. 6. A great opportunity will be afforded, if we drive (shall have driven) them out of our territories. 7. The country has been freed. 8. The country must be freed. 9. If we should gather cavalry, we should free our country. 10. If they gather, they will free. 11. Had they gathered, they would have freed.

Chapters 35 and 36

Word Review. — 1. previous day, to rout, to escape, obtain, station (ships or legions), line of battle, turn one's back, interval, speed, strength, kill (3), far and wide, burn (set on fire). —— 2. I demand hostages of you, bring, near (adj.), weak, weather, midnight, unharmed, make (reach) a harbor, a little farther, a little after, a little below, drift (be carried down).

CONCESSIVE AND CONDITIONAL CLAUSES

Exercise. — 1. Although the enemy were routed, they escaped. 2. Though they be routed, they will escape. 3. Though they had been routed, they would have escaped. 4. If battle had been joined, the enemy would have turned their backs. 5. If they should be routed, they would escape. 6. Had Caesar doubled the number, they would have brought them. 7. If the ships are weak, the voyage must not be exposed to winter. 8. Though he obtains suitable weather, he will not set sail. 9. Though he were to obtain . . . he would not set sail.

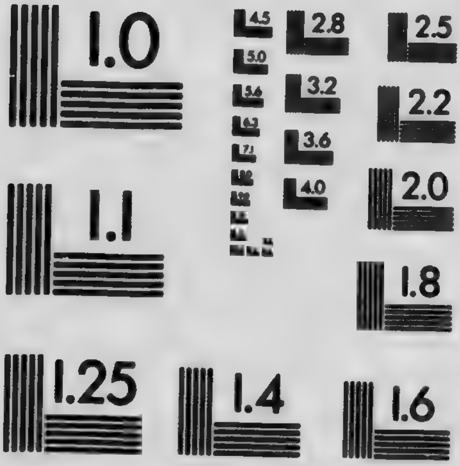
Chapters 37 and 38

Word Review. — 1. land (disembark, intrans.), land (trans.), board (a ship), strive (hasten), leave, plunder (noun), induce, circle (ring), defend, shout, send to the aid of, few wounds, sight



MICROCOPY RESOLUTION TEST CHART

(ANSI and ISO TEST CHART No. 2)



(view), throw away. —— 2. bring back, marsh, refuge, fall into the hands of, previous year, lay waste, cut down (grain), thick (woods), hide (put away), winter quarters, establish, decree.

cum, postquam

Exercise. — 1. After they landed, the Morini made an attack upon them. 2. When they had laid down their arms, they were killed. 3. When they were fighting bravely, Caesar arrived (*advenio*). 4. Since they have no place to flee to (have not whither they may flee), they will fall into my hands. 5. After they had taken to this marsh, they defended themselves more gallantly. 6. When they land (shall have landed), we shall attack them. 7. When they were laying waste the fields, and cutting down the crops, he burnt their buildings. 8. When our men came in sight (1. *ubi*, 2. *cum*), the enemy threw away their arms.

Give Latin parallels for each of the following: —

1. When our men had landed.
2. When a [illegible]ng had been formed.
3. When this news was reported.
4. When they had come.
5. When the war had been renewed.
6. Having sent ambassadors, they asked peace.
7. When the Senate had decreed a thanksgiving.
8. Having arrived at the camp, they, etc.

EXERCISES

CAESAR, BOOK V

Chapter 1

Word Review. — 1. depart, annually, appoint over, am over, old (ships), see after, speed, a load, I load, beach (a ship), launch, low, frequent. —— 2. tide, wave, wide, lowness, aid, fit out. —— 3. assize, neighboring, raid, levy upon, teach (inform), public policy, ready, method, wrong-doing, make amends, arbitrator, amount in dispute, penalty, estimate, settle (fix).

Exercise. — 1. These lieutenants had been put in charge of the army which was on the continent. 2. Build as many ships as you can (shall be able). 3. Many ships are to be built or repaired. 4. These were all made (as) rowing (vessels). 5. He ordered them to build (1. *jubeo*, 2. *impero*). 6. He ordered these ships to be built (1. *jubeo*, 2. *impero.* Show two constructions for *impero*). 7. He levies cavalry upon this state. 8. The soldiers were ordered to assemble (1. *impero* impersonally, 2. *jubeo*). 9. If you do not do so (fut. perf.), I shall harass your state. 10. He sends deputies to appoint arbitrators (1. *ad*, 2. *causā*, 3. supine, 4. rel. of purpose). 11. Having appointed arbitrators, he fixes the penalty. 12. The arbitrators appointed fix the penalty. 13. Arbitrators must be appointed, and the damages assessed. 14. They will come by that day.

Chapter 2

Word Review. — finish, hold assizes, hither Gaul, return, unparalleled zeal, scarcity, show, obey, stir up (instigate).

Exercise. — 1. He heard that these matters were completed and the assizes had been held. 2. The six hundred ships

fitted out by him were launched in a few days. 3. He appointed the lieutenant over the legion. 4. The lieutenants are in charge of the harbor. 5. The Gauls do not wish to obey Caesar. 6. It was said that they were not coming (they were said not to be). 7. It is said (avoid the impersonal) that they have not come, and are not obeying (and not = nor).

Chapter 3

Word Review. — am strong, touch, chieftainship, arrival, duty (allegiance), friendship, fail (fall short), collect corn, collect infantry, age, summer, tide, hide, fear, desert, seek, short-sightedness, faith, common people.

Exercise. — 1. The Romans were strong in infantry and ships. 2. We shall be loyal and shall not desert your friendship. 3. What is going on in these states? 4. He points out what is going on. 5. We shall consult your interest. 6. He feared that they would consult their own interest. 7. Caesar consulted his lieutenants about these things. 8. For the following reason I was unwilling to leave my own (people) and come to you. 9. Consequently the state is in my power, and, if you will permit, I will come to you and intrust my own fortunes to your honor.

VERBS OF FEARING

1. He feared they would not be loyal. 2. They feared he would consult the interests of Cingetorix. 3. We fear they will not send hostages. 4. He said he feared the common people would desert him.

Chapter 4

Word Review. — 1. know, think (3), say, hear, believe, learn, see. —— 2. spend (time), compel, kinsman, it is very important, personal influence, am strong, will (inclination), resent, popularity, lessen, unfriendly spirit, indignation (annoyance, grief).

Genitive of Value (*magni*, *parvi*, etc., with *interest*. See Grammar on *interest* and *refert*).

English Infinitive = **object clause of purpose** (with *hortor* (acc.), *impero* (dat.), *persuadeo* (dat.), *moneo* (acc.), *rogo* (acc.)).

Exercise. — 1. He exhorts them not to be of an unfriendly spirit (abl. of description). 2. He thought that it was more important to spend part of the summer in Britain. 3. It is of little importance to Caesar (to us, to me, to you, to him, to them, to the state) that the chieftain resents these things. 4. He tries to persuade Caesar not to lessen his influence. 5. He warns them to bring hostages by a certain day. 6. He warns them that hostages are to be brought (acc. and inf.).

Chapters 5 and 6

Word Review. — 1. settle, arrive at (reach), storm, drive back (1. of ships in a storm; 2. of an enemy in battle), keep on one's way, return, equip, find, leave, decide (2), disturbance, fear. —— 2. desirous, revolution, power (military), offer, I object (refuse), dare, guest, prayers (entreaties), strive, unaccustomed, I fear (2), hinder, obtain a request, hope, stir up, rob of (what cases?), policy (design), kill (3), oath, bring (information or news).

OBJECTIVE GENITIVE; GENITIVE OF DESCRIPTION

Exercise. — 1. He was aware that the Germans were eager for war. 2. Dumnorix fears the sea because he is unused to ships. 3. He was high spirited and (possessed) of great influence among his own (people). 4. He noted their good will and loyalty towards the Roman people. 5. He was unwilling to leave Dumnorix, because he feared a revolution. 6. Gaul will not be stripped of her chieftains.

Chapter 7

Word Review. — assign, restrain, deter, resolve, hurt (injure), obstruct (hinder), make an effort, duty, at last, embark, interrupt (discontinue), offer violence, obey, slight (disregard), free.

PASSIVE PERIPHRASTIC; CONDITIONAL SENTENCES

Exercise. — 1. I must restrain this man by every means possible. 2. I must take precautions to prevent him from harming me (lest he may). 3. I must exert myself (an effort is to be put forth) to keep him well behaved. 4. Having lingered many days, they embarked. 5. Having obtained suitable weather, the cavalry started for home. 6. When he had learned all his plans, he ordered him to be put to death (1. *jubeo*, 2. *impero*). 7. If he offers violence and does not obey, kill him. 8. Unless (*nisi*) he were to obey, they would kill him. 9. Had he obeyed, they would not have killed him. 10. If any one (*quis*) obeys, he does not hurt him. 11. No harm must be done Caesar (use impersonal gerundive), unless he hurts us (shall have hurt).

Chapter 8

Word Review. — guard, corn supply, make provision for, according to, form plan, equal, sunset, set sail, gentle mind, carry forward, drift (be carried), midnight, daybreak, noon, change, tide, summer, age, landing, prisoner, frighten, heights, shore, hide.

Exercise. — He will leave a large force to guard the ships and harbors. 2. Learn what is going on on the continent. 3. Having left Britain, he drifted till daylight (continued to drift). 4. There is the best landing on that part of the shore. 5. They strove by rowing to keep up with the war vessels. 6. The natives caught sight of Caesar's ships from the heights.

Chapter 9

Word Review. — land (intrans.), land (trans.), encamp, protection, hasten, fasten, espy (catch sight of) (2), join battle, excellently, fortify, by nature and by art, numerous, tree, cut down, block up (in front), enter, form a testudo, throw up a mound, fortifications, few wounds, receive, pursue, forbid, am ignorant of.

Exercise. — 1. Where have the enemy encamped? 2. Forces had been left as a protection to the harbor. 3. They fear our

ships. 4. He had no fear for the army. 5. Having advanced three miles, they espied the enemy. 6. Having joined battle, they were driven back by our men. 7. Having fortified this place — having cut down this tree — having entered the lines of the enemy — having formed a testudo — having thrown up a mound — having spent the day — having left time for fortifying.

Chapters 10 and 11

Word Review. — on the morrow, early in the morning, flee, pursue, arise, wreck, cast up (on shore), pilot, message, messenger, lose, send for, before one's eyes, trouble, choose, hours of the night, excellently, common consent, intrust, continuous wars.

Exercise. — 1. Last (*proximus*) night a great storm arose; almost all the ships were wrecked and cast up on shore, because the anchors and cables did not hold out and the sailors could not withstand the force of the storm. 2. Having chosen workmen he summoned others from Gaul. 3. All the ships, being drawn up, were joined with the camp. 4. Having spent about ten days in this, he succeeded in making the camp safe. 5. The river is called the Rhine. 6. Continuous warfare has existed between Caesar and these states.

Chapters 12, 13, 14

Word Review. — 1. inhabit, plunder, cross, frequent (numerous), cattle, bronze, iron (noun), iron (adj.), weight, coin, tin, inland region, seaboard locality, scanty, timber, beech, fir, hare, hen, goose, I taste, right (in religious sense), pleasure, cold (noun), cold (adj.) —— 2. side, corner, north, south, east, west, equal, bring (a ship) in, civilized, plant (sow), milk, flesh, live, skin (fur), clothe, dye, flowing hair, dreadful appearance, shave, except, regard (deem), children.

Exercise. — 1. The British are in many respects very much like the Gauls. 2. They live, however, largely on beef, and use iron for coin. 3. All the copper they use they import. 4. The island is naturally triangular. 5. One side faces east, a second south, and a third west. 6. The total perimeter of

the island is 2000 miles. 7. The people of Kent are the most civilized and sow grain. 8. The rest are mostly meat-eaters, wear scanty clothing, and dye their bodies. 9. Thus they present a dreadful appearance in battle.

Chapters 15 and 16

Word Review. — engage sharply, suddenly, support, halt, break through, betake one's self, eye, fight, perceive, weight (heaviness), retire, ill adapted, purposely, in close order, in open formation, wide interval, relieve each other.

Exercise. — 1. Our men, because they cannot pursue fugitives and dare not leave their standards, are ill adapted to this enemy. 2. The cavalry, moreover, fight at great risk, because the enemy usually give way on purpose, and when they have enticed our men from their comrades, they leap down and fight on foot. 3. Besides they always fight in skirmishing order, have pickets stationed, and relieve each other with new and unwounded men.

(*Change this to indirect discourse depending upon* dixit.)

Chapter 17

Word Review. — 1. at a distance, halt, resolve, show, gentle, gently, gentler, more gently, provoke, on the day before, on the day after, at noon, at midnight, at daybreak, at sunset, at nightfall, at 2 A.M., at 2 P.M., in three days, on the third day. —— 2. fodder, I forage, suddenly, make a sharp attack, put an end to pursuit, repulse, rely upon, support, drive headlong, collect, give an opportunity, flight, forthwith, reinforcements, depart, ever, full forces, strive.

Exercise. — 1. When Caesar saw that the enemy had taken up their position at some distance from the river, he resolved to display a few men on the hills which were in front of the camp. 2. He ordered (*impero*) an attack to be made at noon more fiercely than on the day before, and the fighting to be continued (that it should be fought) till evening. 3. In the afternoon he sent out several cohorts to forage in the fields which

were in the rear of the camp, but, the enemy making a sharp attack upon them, he promptly ordered a general advance to be made (his men to advance in full force) and the enemy to be driven back. 4. The latter retired some distance to the neighboring hills, and after awaiting reinforcements till sunset, decided that they ought not to keep up the struggle any longer.

Chapters 18 and 19

Word Review. — 1. altogether, cross on foot, with difficulty, notice, the other bank, draw up, sharp stake, fasten in front, beneath the water, cover, send forward, immediately (2), follow up, speed, withstand, commit one's self to flight. —— 2. lay aside hope, dismiss, watch, freely, I plunder, lay waste, road, fear (noun), wander, line of march, allow (suffer), fire (in general), a fire (caused for purpose of destruction), I set on fire, harm.

Exercise. — 1. Having crossed the Thames on foot he drew up the bulk of his forces on the opposite bank and awaited Caesar. 2. The latter, learning his plan from prisoners and deserters, sent forward cavalry and ordered them to ford the river and compel the enemy to quit the banks. 3. Cassivellaunus, giving up all hope, withdrew from the scene, and thereafter merely watched the movements of our army from the hilltops. 4. Whenever he thought an opportunity was afforded, he would emerge from the woods, and after making a swift attack, would betake himself suddenly by some by-path to the impassable woods again.

Chapter 20

Exercise. — Meanwhile, Cassivellaunus having been driven out of the open country (*fields*), the Trinobantes sent envoys and asked Caesar to protect them from ill treatment by their enemies. Their speech was as follows: "We promise to give you hostages, and we will do all you command. Send some one to occupy our throne and command our army. If you do this we will espouse your cause and the man you send

(shall have sent) will never have to flee for his life (death will never have to be avoided by flight)."

Chapter 21

Exercise. — Several other tribes now sent in deputations and said they were willing to surrender. They informed him where Cassivellaunus was hiding, and promised to lead his forces into the woods and marshes of this enemy. The latter, having strongly intrenched himself, was awaiting an inroad from Caesar in one of (*ex*) his towns. When Caesar had delivered his assault upon this town on two sides, the natives, after a short delay, rushed out of the town and many were slain.

Chapter 22

Exercise. — Meanwhile Cassivellaunus had despatched messengers to the kings of Kent, and ordered them to gather forces and make a sudden descent upon Caesar's naval camp. The Romans, when this attack was made, sallied forth and inflicted considerable loss upon them. Cassivellaunus, now giving up all hope, surrendered and agreed to pay tribute to the Roman people.

Chapter 23

Exercise. — 1. I must repair my ships and take back my army. 2. He hoped to receive these hostages by the fifth day. 3. He ordered these ships to be launched. 4. He said he would carry back the army in two divisions, because he had many prisoners and had lost not a few ships. 5. If Labienus had caused more ships to be built, Caesar would have brought all his (men) back safe in one trip. 6. Some of the first convoy having been driven back to the continent, Caesar stowed the rest (of his men) closely and set sail shortly after nine o'clock in the evening. 7. Land having been sighted at daybreak, they were all disembarked in safety before noon.

ABBREVIATIONS

Abbreviations for the names of cases, moods, and tenses will be readily understood.

abl. abs., ablative absolute.
cl., clause.
cf., compare (Lat. *confer*).
conj., conjunction.
mod., modifying.
obj., object.
pred., predicate.
rel., relative.
sc., supply or understand (Lat. *scilicet*).
subj., or *subjunct.*, subjunctive.
subj., subject.

VOCABULARY

Caesar, Books IV and V

A

ā, ab, *from, by, on* (*the side of*), (abl.).

abdō, ere, didī, ditum, *hide.*

abiciō (abjiciō), ere, jēcī, jectum, *throw away.*

abiēs, etis, f., *pine, fir.*

absistō, ere, stitī, *stand aloof, desist.*

absum, esse, fuī, *am distant, absent.*

ac (atque), *and, and also* (throwing emphasis on what follows).

accēdō, ere, cessī, cessum, *approach;* impersonal, *be added.* **hūc accēdit quod (ut)**, *to this is added the fact that.*

accidō, ere, accidī, *happen* (**ad, cadō**, *fall*).

accīdō, ere, accīdī, accīsum, *cut into* (**ad, caedō**, *cut*).

accipiō, ere, accēpī, acceptum, *receive.*

accūrātē, *carefully.*

ācer, cris, cre, *sharp, fierce.*

ācriter, *sharply, fiercely.*

āctuārius, a, um, *propelled by oars; rowing* (vessel).

ad, *to, toward, at;* of time, *by* (acc.).

adaequō, āre, etc., *equal.*

addō, ere, addidī, additum, *add.*

addūcō, ere, dūxī, ductum, *lead to, bring, induce.*

ademptus, see **adimō**.

adeō, īre, īvī (iī), itum, *go to, visit, approach.*

adeō, adv., *so, to such a degree.*

adferō (afferō), ferre, tulī, lātum, *bring forward.*

adficiō, ere, fēcī, fectum, *influence, affect, treat.*

adflīctō, āre, etc., *wreck, damage.*

adflīgō, ere, flīxī, flīctum, *cast down, shatter.*

adgregō (aggregō), āre, etc., *join to.*

adhaereō, ēre, haesī, haesum, *stick to.*

adhibeō, ēre, uī, itum, *bring to bear, call in, employ.*

adhortor, ārī, etc., *encourage.*

adigō, ere, ēgī, āctum, *drive to, throw to.*

adimō, ere, ēmī, emptum, *take away* (acc. of thing, dat. of person).

adipīscor, ī, adeptus, *obtain.*

aditus, ūs, m., *access, approach.*

adiciō (adjiciō), ere, jēcī, jectum, *throw to, add.*

adjungō, ere, jūnxī, jūnctum, *join to.*

adjuvō, āre, jūvī, jūtum, *aid* (acc.).

administro, āre, etc., *manage, conduct.*

admīror, ārī, ātus, *admire, wonder at.*

admittō, ere, mīsī, missum, *admit, incur.*

admŏdum, adv., *quite, much.*

admoneō, ēre, uī, itum, *warn, advise.*

adorior, īrī, adortus, *attack, assault.*

adpello (appellō), ere, pulī, pulsum, *drive to, bring* (a ship) *to port.*

adportō, āre, etc., *carry to.*

adpropinquō (appropinquō), āre, etc., *approach.*

adsiduus, a, um, *continuous.*

adsuēfaciō (assuēfaciō), ere, fēcī, factum, *accustom.*

adtingō (attingō), ere, tigī, tāctum, *reach, touch, border on.*

adtribuō (attribuō), ere, uī, ūtum, *assign, give.*

adulēscēns, ntis, adj., *young, youthful;* noun, *youth, young man.*

adventus, ūs, m., *arrival, approach.*

adversus, a, um, *turned toward, opposite, contrary,*

advolō, āre, etc., *fly to, rush upon.*

aedificium, ī, n., *building.*

aedificō, āre, etc., *build.*

aegrē, adv., *with difficulty.*

aequinoctium, ī, n., *equinox.*

aequus, a, um, *level, equal, fair, just, favorable.*

aes, aeris, n., *bronze, copper, brass.*

aestās, ātis, f., *summer.*

aestimō, āre, etc., *estimate, consider.*

aestus, ūs, m., *tide, current.*

aetās, ātis, f., *age.*

afficiō, see **adficiō**.

Āfricus (ventus), *the south-west wind.*

ager, agrī, *field, land, territory.*

agmen, minis, n., *army on the march, column.*

agō, ere, ēgī, āctum, *put in motion, drive, do, perform.*

alacer, crius, cre, *keen, eager.*

alacritās, ātis, f., *alacrity, keenness, eagerness.*

aliās, adv., *at another time, at one time.*

aliēnus, a, um, *belonging to another, other people's.*

aliō, adv., *in another quarter* or *direction.*

aliquis (quī), quae, quid (quod), indef. pron. or adj., *some, some one.*

aliquot, *some number, several.*

aliter, adv., *otherwise.*

alius, a, ud, gen. alīus, dat. aliī, *another, one* (as opposed to) *another.*

alō, ere, aluī, altum, *nourish, support.*

alter, altera, alterum, gen. alterius, dat. alterī, *the one, the other* (of two).

altitūdō, inis, f., *height, depth.*

altus, a, um, *high, deep.*

āmentia, ae, f., *madness.*

amīcitia, ae, f., *friendship.*

amīcus, a, um, adj., *friendly;* noun, *friend.*

āmittō, ere, mīsī, missum, *lose.*

amplius, comparative adv., *more.*

amplus, a, um, *large, great, powerful, noble* (of birth).

ancŏra, ae, f., *anchor.*
angustiae, ārum, f., *narrows, strait.*
angustius, compar. of **angustē**, *more narrowly, closely.*
angustus, a, um, *narrow, close, contracted, small.*
animadvertō, ere, vertī, versum, *notice, observe.*
animus, ī, m., *mind, spirit, courage.*
annōtinus, a, um, *last year's.*
annus, ī, m., *year.*
ānser, eris, m., *goose.*
ante, adv. and prep., *before* (as prep. governs acc.).
antecēdō, ere, cessī, cessum, *go before, precede.*
antepōnō, ere, posuī, positum, *set before, prefer.*
Ap. = **Appius.**
apertus, a, um, *open, exposed.*
appellō, āre, etc., *call, name.*
appellō, ere, pulī, pulsum, see **adpellō.**
apportō, see **adportō.**
appropinquō, see **adpropinquō.**
aptus, a, um, *suited.*
apud, *at, among, with* (acc.).
aqua, ae, f., *water.*
aquātiō, ōnis, f., *getting water.*
aquila, ae, f., *eagle, standard.*
aquilifer, ferī, m., *standard-bearer.*
arbiter, trī, m., *arbitrator, judge, umpire.*
arbitror, ārī, ātus, *think.*
arbor, ŏris, f., *tree.*
ārdeō, ēre, ārsī, ārsum, *be in a blaze, burn.*
argentum, ī, n., *silver.*
āridus, a, um, *dry, parched;* noun, in the neut. *dry land.*
ariēs, arietis, m., *ram, battering-ram.*
arma, ōrum, n. plur., *arms.*
armāmenta, ōrum, n. plur., *tackle, rigging, gear.*
armātus, a, um, *armed.*
armō, āre, etc., *equip, fit out.*
ars, artis, f., *art, skill.*
ascendō, ere, ascendī, ascēnsum, *climb, ascend.*
asper, aspera, asperum, *rough, harsh, severe.*
at, *but.*
atque, **ac**, *and, and also.*
attingō, see **adtingō.**
attribuō, see **adtribuō.**
auctor, ōris, m., *adviser, instigator.*
auctōritās, ātis, f., *influence, prestige, weight;* rarely, *authority.*
audācter, *boldly.*
audeō, ēre, ausus sum, *dare, venture, have the courage to.*
audiō, īre, īvī, ītum, *hear, listen to.*
audītiō, ōnis, f., *hearsay, rumor.*
auriga, ae, m., *chariot-driver.*
aut, conj., *or, either.*
autem, 1. *moreover;* 2. *but, however;* 3. *now* (transitional or explanatory).
auxilium, ī, n., *help, aid;* plur., *reinforcements, auxiliary forces.*
āvertō, ere, vertī, versum, *turn away.*
avis, is, f., *bird.*
avus, ī, m., *grandfather.*

B

barbarus, a, um, *barbarian, uncivilized.*
bellicōsus, a, um, *warlike.*
bellum, ī, n., *war.*

bene, adv., *well.*
beneficium, ī, n., *kindness.*
benevolentia, ae, f., *good will, kindness.*
bīnī, distrib. numeral, *two each, two at a time.*
bipertītō, adv., *in two divisions.*
bōs, bovis, *ox.*
brevis, e, *short.*
brūma, ae, f., *winter, winter solstice* (shortest day in the year); = **brevissima (dies).**

C

C. = **Caius** or **Gaius**
cadō, ere, cecidī, cāsum, *fall, die or be slain in battle.*
caedēs, is, f., *killing, slaughter.*
caeruleus, a, um, *deep blue.*
caespes, caespitis, m., *sod, turf.*
calamitās, ātis, f., *disaster.*
capiō, ere, cēpī, captum, *take.*
caput, itis, n., *head.*
carō, carnis, f., *flesh, meat.*
carrus, ī, m., *cart, wagon.*
castra, ōrum, n, plur., *camp.*
cāsus, ūs, m., *chance, accident.*
causa, ae, f., *cause, reason*; **causā**, *for the sake of.*
cēdō, ere, cessī, cessum, *yield, retire.*
celer, eris, ere, *swift, quick.*
celeritās, ātis, f., *swiftness, quickness, speed.*
celeriter, *quickly.*
centum, *a hundred.*
centuriō, ōnis, m., *centurion.*
certē, *certainly, exactly.*
certus, a, um, *certain, exact*; **certior fīō**, *I am informed*; **certiōrem faciō**, *I inform.*
cēterus, a, um (mostly in plur.), *the rest, the others.*
cibus, ī, m., *food.*
cingō, ere, cīnxī, cīnctum, *surround.*
circiter, adv., *about* (of numbers).
circuitus, ūs, *circuit, circumference, perimeter.*
circum, *around* (acc.).
circumdō, dare, dedī, datum, *surround.*
circumeō, īre, īvī (iī), itum, *go the rounds of, visit* (in turn).
circumsistō, ere, stitī, *surround, stand around.*
circumveniō, īre, vēnī, ventum, *surround.*
cis, **citrā**, prep., *this side of* (acc.).
citātus, *swift.*
citerior, *hither, nearer.*
citissimē, *most swiftly.*
cīvitās, ātis, f., *state.*
clam, *secretly.*
clāmitō, āre, etc., *cry out, shout.*
clāmor, ōris, m., *shout, outcry.*
clārus, a, um (*bright, clear, loud*), *renowned, distinguished.*
cliēns, entis, m., *follower, adherent, retainer, dependent, vassal.*
coerceō, ēre, uī, itum, *restrain.*
coepī, isse, *begin* (always in perf. tenses).
cōgitō, āre, etc., *reflect, think over.*
cognōscō, ere, cognōvī, cognitum, *learn, ascertain.*
cōgō, ere, coēgī, coāctum, 1. *compel*; 2. *collect.*
cohors, rtis, f., *cohort.*
cohortor, ārī, cohortātus, *exhort, urge.*
collis, is, m., *hill.*

colligō (=**conligō**), ere, lēgī, lēctum, *gather, assemble.*
color, ōris, m., *color.*
commeātus, ūs, m., 1. *instalment, relay;* 2. *supplies.*
commemorō, āre, etc., *call to mind, mention, relate.*
commendō, āre, etc., *intrust.*
commīlitō, ōnis, m., *fellow-soldier, comrade.*
committō, ere, mīsī, missum, *intrust; join* (battle).
commodus, a, um, *convenient, suitable.*
commoror, ārī, ātus, *delay.*
commūnicō, āre, etc., *share, communicate.*
commūnis, e, *common, general.*
commūtātiō, ōnis, f., *change.*
comparō, āre, etc., *get together, get ready, procure, raise* (forces).
comperiō, īre, perī, pertum, *discover, ascertain.*
compleō, ēre, plēvī, plētum, *fill.*
complūrēs, ium, *several.*
comportō, āre, etc., *carry together, gather.*
comprehendō, ere, hendī, hēnsum, *seize.*
comprobō, āre, etc., *confirm.*
concidō, ere, cidi, *fall down, collapse.*
conciliō, āre, etc., *win over, conciliate.*
concilium, ī, n., *council, assembly.*
concitō, āre, etc., *arouse, stir up.*
conclāmō, āre, etc., *shout together.*
concurrō, ere, currī, cursum, *run together.*
concursus, ūs, m., *rushing together.*
condiciō, ōnis, f., *condition, terms.*
condūcō, ere, dūxī, ductum, *bring together; hire.*
cōnferō, ferre, tulī, latum (or collātum), *bring together, betake.*
cōnfertus, perf. part. pass. of **cōnferciō**, *crowded, closely packed.*
cōnfestim, *immediately.*
cōnficiō, ere, fēcī, fectum, *finish, conclude, accomplish, exhaust* or *disable.*
cōnfīdō, ere, fīsus sum, semi-dep., *believe in, trust, feel sure;* governs abl. or dat.
cōnfirmō, āre, etc., *strengthen, encourage, assert.*
cōnfiteor, ērī, fessus, *acknowledge, confess.*
cōnfluēns, entis, m., *confluence, junction* (of rivers).
coniciō (**conjiciō**), ere, jēcī, jectum, *hurl, fling.*
conjungō, ere, jūnxī, jūnctum, *join, unite.*
conjūrātiō, ōnis, f., *conspiracy, sworn league.*
conlaudō (**collaudō**), āre, etc., *praise highly.*
conligō, see **colligō**.
conlocō (**collocō**), āre, etc., *set, station.*
conloquium (**colloquium**), ī, n., *conference, conversation.*
conloquor (**colloquor**), ī, locūtus, *converse, confer, parley.*
cōnor, ārī, ātus, *attempt, endeavor, try.*
cōnscendō, ere, scendī, scēnsum, *embark.*
cōnsector, ārī, ātus, *follow, pursue.*

cōnsentiō, īre, sēnsī, sēnsum, *agree.*

cōnsequor, sequī, secūtus, *overtake, follow up, attain, gain.*

cōnsīdō, ere, sēdī, sessum (*sit down together*), *encamp, settle.*

cōnsilium, ī, n., *plan, scheme, counsel, judgment.*

cōnsimilis, e, *very like.*

cōnsistō, ere, stitī, *stand firm, halt, gain a footing.*

cōnsōlor, ārī, ātus, *console, comfort.*

cōnspectus, ūs, m., *sight, view.*

cōnspiciō, ere, spexī, spectum, *catch sight of, behold, see.*

cōnspicor, ārī, ātus, *perceive, behold.*

cōnstat, impersonal verb, *it is well known, agreed.*

cōnstituō, uere, uī, ūtum, *decide, settle; resolve, determine; draw up* (troops), *station.*

cōnsuēscō, ere, suēvī, *become accustomed;* **cōnsuēvī**, perf. = *am accustomed;* **cōnsuēveram**, pluperf. = *was accustomed.*

cōnsuētūdō, inis, f., *custom.*

cōnsul, is, m., *consul.*

cōnsulō, ere, suluī, sultum, *consult* (acc.); with dat., *consult the interests of.*

cōnsultō, adv., *purposely.*

cōnsūmō, ere, sūmpsī, sūmptum, *consume, spend* (time).

cōnsurgō, ere, surrēxī, surrēctum, *arise, rise up.*

contemnō, ere, tempsī, temptum, *despise, make light of.*

contendō, ere, tendī, tentum, *strive, hasten; contend.*

contentiō, ōnis, f., *rivalry.*

contestor, ārī, ātus, *call to witness.*

contexō, ere, texuī, textum, *weave together, bind together.*

continēns, ntis, f., *mainland;* as adj., *continuous.*

contineō, ēre, tinuī, tentum, *restrain, contain, bound.*

contingō, ere, tigī, tāctum, *touch, reach.*

continuus, a, um, *continual, continuous, unbroken.*

contiō, ōnis, f., *assembly; harangue.*

contrā, *against, contrary to, opposite* (acc.); as adv., *on the contrary.*

contrahō, ere, trāxī, trāctum, *draw together, assemble.*

conveniō, īre, vēnī, ventum, *come together, assemble, muster.*

conventus, ūs, m., *assembly, assize court.*

convertō, ere, vertī, versum, *turn about.*

convocō, āre, etc., *call together, assemble* (trans.).

coorior, īrī, ortus, *arise.*

cōpia, ae, f., *abundance, plenty, supply;* plur., (*military*) *forces.*

corpus, oris, n., *body.*

cōrus, ī, m., *north-west wind.*

cotīdiānus, a, um, adj., *daily.*

cotīdiē, adv., *daily.*

crēber, bra, brum, *numerous, frequent.*

crēdō, ere, didī, ditum, *believe, trust* (dat. of person).

cruciātus, ūs, m., *torture.*

cultūra, ae, f., *cultivation.*

cum, 1. prep., *with* (abl.); 2. conj., *when, while, since, although.*

cunctor, ārī, ātus, *hesitate, delay.*

cupidus, a, um, *eager for, desirous of* (gen.).
cūr, *why*.
cūrō, āre, etc., *take care, see after, get* (a thing done).
currus, ūs, m., *chariot*.
cursus, ūs, m., *course; speed* (currō, *run*).
cūstōdia, ae, f., *guard*.

D

dē, *down from; about, concerning; from, owing to* (abl.).
dēbeō, ēre, uī, itum, *owe; ought*.
dēcēdō, ere, cessī, cessum, *depart*.
decem, *ten*; **decimus**, *tenth*.
dēcernō, ere, crēvī, crētum, *decide, resolve*.
dēcertō, āre, etc., *fight to the end*.
dēclīvis, e, *sloping*.
dēdecus, oris, n., *disgrace*.
dēditiō, ōnis, f., *surrender*.
dēdō, ere, dēdidī, dēditum, *surrender, give up*.
dēdūcō, ere, dūxī, ductum, *launch; withdraw*.
dēfatīgō, āre, etc., *weary, exhaust*.
defectiō, ōnis, *revolt, defection*.
dēfendō, ere, fendī, fēnsum, *ward off, defend, protect*.
dēfēnsor, ōris, m., *defender*.
dēferō, ferre, tūlī, lātum, *offer, report, submit*.
dēficiō, ere, fēcī, fectum, *fail, fall short, fall away, revolt*.
dēfīgō, ere, fīxī, fixum, *fasten down*.
dēfluō, ere, fluxī, fluxum, *flow down*.
dēfōrmis, e, *ill-shapen*.
dēiciō, ere, jēcī, jectum, *throw down, unhorse, dismount*.
deinceps, *in succession*.
dēlectō, āre, etc., *please, delight*.
dēligō, ere, lēgī, lēctum, *choose*.
dēligō, āre, etc., *bind, fasten*.
dēlitēscō, ere, lituī, *lie in ambush*.
dēmentia, ae, f., *madness, folly*.
dēmetō, ere, messuī, messum, *reap, harvest*.
dēmigrō, āre, etc., *remove, move away*.
dēmittō, ere, mīsī, missum, *send down, let down*.
dēmō, ere, dēmpsī, dēmptum, *take away*.
dēmōnstrō, āre, etc., *show, point out, mention*.
dēmum, *at last*.
dēnī, ae, a, *ten in each case*.
dēnsus, a, um, *thick, dense*.
dēnūntiō, āre, etc., *announce, declare*.
dēpōnō, ere, posuī, positum, *put down, lay aside, put away*.
dēprecor, ārī, ātus, *beg off, supplicate*.
dēprehendō, ere, hendī, hēnsum, *seize*.
dēscendō, ere, scendī, scēnsum, *descend, dismount*.
dēserō, serere, seruī, sertum, *abandon, desert*.
dēsīderō, āre, etc., *look for in vain, miss*.
dēsiliō, īre, siluī, sultum, *leup down*.
[illegible]**tō**, ere, destitī, *leave off, de*[illegible] *from* (abl.).
dēspērō, āre, etc., *despair of* (acc.).
dēsum, deesse, defuī (sum), *am lacking*.
dēterreō, ēre, uī, territum, *frighten from, deter, hinder*.

dētrīmentum, ī, n., *loss.*
dēturbō, āre, etc., *dislodge.*
dēvehō, ere, vexī, vexum, *carry down, away.*
dexter, tra, trum, *on the right-hand side, right.*
dīcō, ere, dīxī, dictum, *say, tell.*
dictum, ī, n., *word, statement.*
diēs, ēī, m. (sometimes fem. in sing.), *day, date.*
differō, ferre, distulī, dīlatum, *differ; defer, postpone.*
difficultās, ātis, f., *difficulty.*
diffīdō, ere, fīsus sum, semi-dep., *distrust.*
dignitās, ātis, f., *worth, dignity, position.*
dījūdicō, āre, etc., *judge between, determine.*
dīligēns, entis, *careful.*
dīligentia, ae, f., *carefulness.*
dīmicō, āre, etc., *fight.*
dīmidium, ī, n., *half.*
dīmittō, ere, mīsī, missum, *dismiss; send out, leave, quit.*
discēdō, ere, cessī, cessum, *depart, withdraw.*
discessus, ūs, m., *departure, withdrawal.*
disciplīna, ae, f., *training.*
dispōnō, ere, posuī, positum, *place at intervals, distribute.*
dissimulō, āre, etc., *conceal.*
distribuō, ere, uī, ūtum, *distribute, divide up.*
diū, **diūtius**, **diūtissimē**, *long* (of time).
diūtinus, a, um, *lasting for a long time.*
dīvidō, ere, dīvīsī, dīvīsum, *divide, separate.*
dō, dare, dedī, datum, *give.*
doceō, ēre, uī, doctum, *teach, inform.*
doleō, ēre, uī, *grieve.*
dolor, ōris, m., *grief, resentment, indignation.*
dolus, ī, m., *craft, guile, trick.*
domesticus, a, um, *domestic, internal, civil* (war).
domus, ūs, f., *home, house.*
dubitātiō, ōnis, f., *hesitation.*
ducentī, ae, a, *two hundred.*
dūcō, ere, dūxī, ductum, *lead; deem, think.*
dum, *while; until; provided that.*
duo, duae, duo, *two.*
duodēnī, ae, a, *twelve each.*
dūplicō, āre, etc., *double.*
dūrus, a, um, *hard.*
dux, ducis, m., *leader, general.*

E

ē, **ex**, *out of, from; according to* (abl.).
ēdūcō, ere, dūxī, ductum, *lead out.*
effēminō, āre, etc., *make effeminate, weaken, enervate.*
efficiō, ere, fēcī, fectum, *accomplish, render, make, cause.*
effugiō, ere, fūgī, *escape.*
effundō, ere, fūdī, fūsum, *pour forth.*
ēgredior, ī, gressus, *go forth; disembark, land* (intrans.).
ēgregius, a, um, *extraordinary, excellent;* adv. **ēgregiē**.
ēgressus, ūs, m., *landing, disembarkation.*
ēiciō (**ējiciō**), ere, jēcī, jectum, *throw out;* with reflexive pron., *rush out.*
ēlābor, ī, lapsus, *slip out, escape.*

ēmittō, ere, mīsī, missum, *send out, let loose.*

enim, conj., *for* (never put first).

ēnūntiō, āre, etc., *announce.*

eō, īre, īvī (iī), itum, *go.*

eō, 1. adv. of place, *thither* (an old acc.); 2. adv. of degree (really abl. of **is**), *the.*

eōdem, *to the same place.*

eques, itis, m., *horseman, cavalryman.*

equester, tris, tre, *(of) cavalry* (adj.).

equitātus, ūs, m., *cavalry* (noun).

equus, ī, m., *horse.*

ergā, *towards* (of conduct) (acc.).

ēripiō, ere, uī, reptum, *snatch, rescue.*

errō, āre, etc., *wander; stray, err, make a mistake.*

ēruptiō, ōnis, f., *a sally* (**rumpō**, *break*).

esseda (**essedum**), *war-chariot* (British).

essedarius, ī, m., *chariot-warrior, charioteer.*

et, *and, both, even, also.*

etiam, *even, also.*

etsī, *even if, although.*

ēveniō, īre, vēnī, ventum, *turn out, result.*

ēventus, ūs, m., *result, outcome.*

ēvocō, āre, etc., *call forth, summon.*

exagitō, āre, etc., *harass.*

exāminō, āre, etc., *test* (in the balance).

exārdēscō, ere, ārsi, ārsum, *blaze forth, be inflamed.*

excēdō, ere, cessī, cessum, *leave, withdraw.*

excipiō, ere, cēpī, ceptum, *receive, succeed to, relieve.*

excitō, āre, etc., *excite, stir up.*

exclūdō, ere, clūsī, clūsum, *exclude, cut off* (**claudō**).

excūsō, āre, etc., *excuse.*

exeō, īre, īvī (iī), itum, *go out.*

exerceō, ēre, uī, itum, *exercise, drill, practise.*

exercitātiō, ōnis, f., *exercise, drill, practice.*

exercitus, ūs, m., *army.*

exhauriō, īre, hausī, haustum, *draw out, empty.*

exiguitās, ātis, f., *smallness.*

exiguus, a, um, *small, scanty.*

existimō, āre, etc., *think.*

existimātiō, ōnis, f., *opinion.*

exitus, ūs, *result, issue, conclusion, end.*

expedītiō, ōnis, *foray, light-armed march.*

expeditus, a, um, *unhampered, free, lightly equipped.*

expello, ere, pulī, pulsum, *expel, drive out.*

experior, īrī, expertus, *try, make trial.*

explōrātor, ōris, m., *scout.*

explōrō, āre, etc., *investigate, search; make sure of.*

expōnō, ere, posuī, positum, *place out, disembark, display.*

exsistō (**existō**), sistere, stitī, *arise.*

exspectō (**expectō**), āre, etc., *await, wait for* (acc.); *wait* (intrans.).

extrahō, ere, trāxī, trāctum, *draw out, protract, spin out, employ* (time).

extrēmus, a, um, *farthest, last.*

F

faber, brī, m., *workman.*
facilis, e, *easy*; adv. **facile.**
faciō, ere, fēcī, factum, *make, do*; passive, **fīo.**
factum, ī, n., *deed, act, fact* (really perf. part. used substantively).
facultās, ātis, f., *opportunity, means, chance.*
fāgus, ī, f., *beech-tree.*
fallō, ere, fefellī, falsum, *deceive, escape notice of, disappoint.*
falx, falcis, f., *sickle, grappling-hook.*
fāma, ae, f., *report, talk, fame.*
famēs, is (abl. **famē** of 5th decl.), f., *hunger, famine.*
familiāris, is, m., *close friend.*
fās, n. (indecl.), *that which is right, lawful* (in a religious sense).
fēliciter, adv. of **fēlix**, *happily, fortunately.*
fera, ae, f., *wild animal, beast.*
ferē, adv., *almost, nearly.*
ferō, ferre, tulī, lātum, *bear, carry.*
ferrāmentum, ī, n., *iron tool.*
ferrum, ī, n., *iron; the sword.*
fertilis, e, *fertile.*
ferus, a, um, *wild, savage.*
fidēlis, e, *faithful, loyal.*
fidēs, eī, f., *faith, word* (of honor), *loyalty, protection.*
figūra, ae, f., *shape, build.*
fīlius, ī, m., *son.*
fingō, ere, finxī, fictum, *invent* (a story), *form artificially* (compare Eng. *fiction, fictitious*).
fīniō, īre, īvī, ītum, *finish, end, be a boundary, limit.*
fīnis, is, m. (rarely f.), *end, limit, boundary*; plur., **fīnēs**, *territory.*
fīnitimus, a, um, *bordering, neighboring*; as noun, *neighbor.*
fīō, fierī, factus sum (passive of **faciō**), *be made; be done; become, take place.*
firmiter, adv. of **firmus**, *strongly.*
firmitūdō, inis, f., *strength, stability.*
firmus, a, um, *strong.*
flectō, ere, flexī, flexum, *bend, turn.*
flētus, ūs, m., *weeping.*
flō, flāre, etc., *blow.*
flōrēns, entis, *flourishing.*
fluctus, ūs, m., *wave.*
flūmen, minis, n., *river.*
fore = **futurus esse**, fut. inf. of **sum.**
fōrma, ae, f., *shape.*
forte, adv. (really abl. of **fors**), *by chance.*
fortis, e, *brave, strong* (mentally); adv., **fortiter.**
fortūna, ae, f., *good* (or *bad*) *fortune, success* (caused by circumstances).
fossa, ae, f., *ditch, trench* (**fodiō**, *dig*).
frangō, ere, frēgī, frāctum, *break.*
frāter, tris, m., *brother.*
fremitus, ūs, m., *noise* (of voices), *uproar.*
frequēns, entis, *numerous, in great numbers.*
frīgidus, a, um, *cold* (adj.).
frīgus, oris, n., *cold* (noun).
frūmentārius, a, um, *pertaining to corn* or *grain*; **rēs frūmentāria**, *corn supply, grain supply.*

frūmentor, ārī, ātus, *get grain, corn, forage.*
frūmentum, ī, n., *grain, corn.*
frūstrā, adv., *in vain.*
fūga, ae, f., *flight, rout.*
fūgiō, ere, fūgī, fūgitum, *flee.*
fūmus, ī, m., *smoke.*
funda, ae, f., *sling.*
fūnis, is, m., *rope, cable, hawser.*

G

gallīna, ae, f., *hen.*
gaudeō, ēre, gāvīsus sum, semi-dep., *rejoice.*
gener, erī, m., *son-in-law.*
gēns, ntis, f., *race, nation.*
genus, eris, n., *kind, class, family.*
gerō, ere, gessī, gestum, *carry, carry on, perform, do, wage* (war).
gladius, ī, m., *sword.*
glōria, ae, f., *glory, renown.*
grātia, ae, f., *favor, good will, influence; gratitude, thanks.*
grāvis, e, *heavy, serious;* **adv.**, **graviter**; **graviter ferō**, *I resent, am indignant* or *annoyed at.*
gravitās, ātis, f., *weight, importance.*
gubernātor, ōris, *helmsman, pilot.*
gustō, āre, etc., *taste.*

H

habeō, ēre, uī, itum, *have, hold; deem, consider.*
haud, *not.*
hīberna, ōrum (n. plur. of adj. **hībernus**), *winter quarters, winter camp* (**castra** understood).
Hibernia, ae, f., *Ireland.*
hic, haec, hōc, demonst. pron. or adj., *this.*
hīc, adv., *here.*
hiemō, āre, etc., *winter, pass the winter.*
hiems, is, f., *winter.*
Hispānia, ae, f., *Spain.*
homo, inis, m. or f., *human being, man;* plur., **hominēs**, *people.*
honestus, a, um, *honorable, noble.*
honor, ōris, m., *honor* (outward).
hōra, ae, f., *hour.*
horridus, a, um (*shaggy, bristly*), *repellent, dreadful.*
hortor, ārī, ātus, *exhort, encourage, urge.*
hospitium, ī, n., *friendship.*
hostis, is, m., *enemy.*
hūc, adv., *hither;* **hūc accēdit**, *to this is added.*
hūmānus, a, um, *civilized, human.*
hūmilis, e, *low, lowly, humble, submissive.*
hūmilitās, ātis, f., *lowness, humility.*

I or J

NOTE.—**J** is merely another form of **i** to denote the consonant or **y** value, *i.e.* where **i** does not form a separate syllable but is thickened into an introductory sound.

jaciō, ere, jēcī, jactum, *throw;* disting. from **jaceō**, ēre, *lie* (down).
jaculum, ī, n., *javelin.*
jam, *now, already; by this time.*
ibi, *there.*
idcircō, *for that reason.*
īdem, eadem, īdem, *same.*
idōneus, a, um, *suitable.*
ignis, is, m., *fire.*

ignōbilis, e, *unrenowned, obscure, lowly.*

ignōrō, āre, etc., *am ignorant of.*

ignōscō, ere, gnōvi, gnōtum, *pardon* (dat.).

ignōtus, a, um, *unknown.*

ille, illa, illud, *that* (denoting remoteness).

illō, adv., *thither.*

Illyricum, ī, n., *Illyricum*, a country on the north-east coast of the Adriatic.

immānis, e, *huge, immense.*

immittō, ere, mīsī, missum, *send in, let in.*

impedimentum, ī, n., *hindrance;* plur., *baggage.*

impediō, īre, īvī, ītum, *hinder, obstruct, impede.*

impedītus, a, um, perf. part., *hindered, hampered;* of a place, *impassable.*

impellō, ere, pūlī, pulsum, *urge on.*

impēnsus, a, um (*unweighed*), *enormous, extravagant.*

imperātor, ōris, m., *commander, general.*

imperātum, ī, n. (really perf. part.), *something ordered, a command.*

imperītus, a, um, *unskilled in* (gen.).

imperium, ī, n., *command* (the power or right).

imperō, āre, etc., 1. *order, command* (dat. of person receiving the order, clause of purpose for thing ordered = Eng. inf.); 2. *demand* (acc. of thing demanded).

impetrō, āre, etc., *obtain* (a request).

impetus, ūs, m., *attack, charge; impetus, force.*

implōrō, āre, etc., *beseech, implore, invoke.*

importō, āre, etc., *import, bring in.*

imprōvīsus, a, um, *unforeseen;* **dē imprōvīsō**, *unexpectedly.*

imprūdēns, ntis, *rash, thoughtless, unforeseeing; unaware, unsuspecting.*

imprūdentia, ae, f., *thoughtlessness, lack of foresight.*

imus, superl. of **inferus**, *lowest.*

in, 1. with abl., *in, on;* 2. with acc., *into.*

incendium, ī, n., *fire, conflagration.*

incertus, a, um, *uncertain.*

incipiō, ere, cēpī, ceptum, *begin.*

incitō, āre, etc., *excite, spur on, urge on.*

incognitus, a, um, *unknown.*

incolō, ere, coluī, cultum, *inhabit; dwell.*

incolumis, e, *safe, unharmed.*

incommodē, *inconveniently, unfortunately.*

incommodum, ī, n., *mishap, injury, disadvantage.*

incrēdibilis, e, *incredible.*

incursiō, ōnis, f., *raid, foray.*

inde, *thence, next.*

indignus, a, um, *unworthy.*

indūtiae, ārum, f. plur., *truce, armistice.*

ineō, īre, īvī (ii), itum, *enter, enter on, adopt.*

inferior, *lower.*

inferō, ferre, tūlī, lātum, *wage offensive warfare.*

inficiō, ere, fēcī, fectum, *dye.*
infinitus, a, um, *unlimited, unnumbered.*
infirmitās, ātis, f., *weakness, fickleness.*
infirmus, a, um, *weak, feeble, fickle.*
influō, ere, fluxī, fluxum, *flow into.*
infrā, *below.*
ingēns, entis, *huge, vast.*
ingredior, ī, gressus, *enter.*
iniciō (**injiciō**), ere, jēcī, jectum, *throw into, inspire.*
inimīcus, ī, m., *enemy* (personal); as adj., *unfriendly.*
iniquus, a, um, *unequal, unfavorable, unfair.*
initium, ī, *beginning.*
injūria, ae, f., *harm, wrong-doing, wrong, injustice.*
injussū, *without the order of.*
inopia, ae, f., *want, scarcity.*
inopīnāns, antis, *not expecting, off one's guard.*
inquam, *say I;* most common form **inquit**, *says he, he says.*
inrumpō, ere, rūpī, ruptum, *burst in, dash in.*
insciēns, ntis, *unaware.*
inscius, a, um, *ignorant, unaware.*
insequor, ī, secūtus, *pursue, follow.*
insidiae, ārum, f. plur., *ambuscade, treachery, stratagem.*
insinuō, āre, etc., with reflexive pron., *work one's way in.*
insistō, ere, stitī, *stand on, get firm footing.*
instābilis, e, *unsteady.*
instituō, ere, uī, ūtum, *form, build; set about.*
institūtum, ī, *custom, mode of life.*
instō, stāre, stitī, *press on.*
instruō, ere, strūxī, strūctum, *draw up, equip.*
insuēfactus, a, um, *accustomed, trained.*
insuētus, a, um, *unaccustomed.*
insula, ae, f., *island.*
intellegō, ere, lēxī, lēctum, *know, understand, perceive.*
inter, *between* (acc.).
intercēdō, ere, cessī, cessum, *come between, intervene.*
interdīcō, ere, dixī, dictum, *forbid, caution.*
intereā, *meanwhile.*
interficiō, ere, fēcī, fectum, *kill.*
interior, *inner.*
intermittō, ere, mīsī, missum, *interrupt, discontinue* (temporarily).
interpōnō, ere, posuī, positum, *interpose.*
intersum, esse, fuī, *am between;* impersonal, **interest**, *it is important.*
intervāllum, ī, n., *interval.*
intrā, *within* (acc.).
introitus, ūs, m., *entrance, approach.*
inūsitātus, a, um, *unfamiliar, strange.*
inūtilis, e, *useless.*
inveniō, īre, vēnī, ventum, *find, discover.*
inveterāscō, ere, veterāvī, *grow old, become established.*
invītō, āre, etc., *invite.*
invītus, a, um, *unwilling.*
ipse, ipsa, ipsum, *self, very.*
is, ea, id, *he, this, that, it.*
ita, *so, thus.*

itaque, *and so, therefore.*
item, *likewise.*
iter, itineris, n., *road, journey, march.*
Itius Portus, a harbor near site of Calais, opposite Dover.
jubeō, ēre, jussī, jussum, *order, bid.*
jūdicium, ī, n., *judgment, decision.*
jūdicō, āre, etc., *judge, deem, consider.*
jūgum, ī, n., *yoke.*
jūmentum, ī, n., *yoke-animal, beast of burden, baggage-animal.*
junctūra, ae, f., *joining.*
jungō, ere, jūnxī, junctum, *join.*
jūs, jūris, n., *right, law.*
jūsjūrandum, jūrisjurandī, n., *oath.*
jūstus, a, um, *just, truthful.*

L

L. = **Lucius.**
lābor, ōris, m., *work, toil, hardship.*
lābor, ī, lapsus, *slip, fail.*
labōrō, āre, etc., *labor, toil, be in distress.*
lac, lactis, n., *milk.*
lacessō, ere, cessīvi, cessītum, *provoke, attack.*
laetitia, ae, f., *joy.*
lapis, idis, m., *stone.*
lātē, *widely.*
lātitūdō, inis, *breadth, width.*
lātus, a, um, *broad, wide.*
lātus, eris, n., *side.*
laudō, āre, etc., *praise.*
laus, laudis, f., *praise, glory, credit.*
lavō, āre, lāvī, lōtum, lautum, *or* lavatum, *wash, bathe* (trans.; the intrans. meaning is rendered by the pass.).
lēgātiō, ōnis, f., *embassy.*
lēgātus, ī, m., *deputy, lieutenant* (*staff officer*); *ambassador, envoy.*
legiō, ōnis, f., *legion.*
lēnis, e, *mild, gentle*; adv., **lēniter.**
lepus, ōris, m., *hare.*
levis, e, *light, weak, fickle.*
levitās, ātis, *lightness, fickleness.*
levō, are, etc., *lighten, relieve.*
lēx, lēgis, f., *a law, enactment.*
līber, era, erum, *free.*
līberāliter, *generously.*
līberī, ōrum, m., *children.*
līberō, āre, etc., *free.*
lībertās, ātis, f., *liberty, freedom.*
licet, ēre, uit, impersonal, *it is lawful, permitted.*
līs, lītis, f., *dispute, quarrel.*
littera, ae, *letter* (of the alphabet); plur., *a letter, epistle, despatch.*
lītus, oris, n., *shore.*
lŏcus, ī, m., *place*; plur., **loca.**
longē, *far.*
longinquus, a, um, *distant.*
longitūdō, inis, f., *length.*
longus, a, um, *far, long* (usually of distance).
loquor, ī, locūtus, *speak.*
lōrīca, ae, f., *breastplate; breastwork.*
lūna, ae, f., *moon.*
lūx, lūcis, f., *light.*

M

magis, adv., *more.*
magistrātus, ūs, 1. *magistracy*; 2. *magistrate.*
māgnitūdō, inis, f., *size.*
māgnopere, adv., corresponding to **māgnus**, *greatly, earnestly.*

māgnus, a, um, *great.*

mājor, *greater*; **mājōres nātū**, *elderly men, older men*; **mājōrēs**, *ancestors.*

mandō, āre, etc., *intrust, enjoin.*

māne, *early in the morning.*

maneō, ēre, mānsī, mānsum, *remain.*

manus, ūs, f., *hand*; *band, force.*

mare, maris, n., *sea.*

maritimus, a, um, *maritime, of the sea.*

māteria, ae, f., *timber.*

mātūrus, a, um, *early.*

māximē, superl. of **māgnopere**, *most greatly, chiefly, especially.*

māximus, a, um, *greatest.*

medeor, ērī, *remedy, cure* (dat.).

mediterrāneus, a, um, *inland.*

medius, a, um, *middle.*

membrum, ī, n., *limb.*

memoria, ae, f., *memory.*

mēnsūra, ae, f., *measurement.*

mercātor, ōris, m., *trader, merchant.*

meridi[illegible] a, um, *at noon, midday.*

meridi[illegible] n, *midday*; *south.*

meritum, [illegible], *service, good deed.*

metō, ere, messuī, messum, *mow, reap, harvest.*

metus, ūs, m., *fear.*

meus, a, um, *my.*

mīles, itis, m., *soldier.*

mīlitāris, e, *military.*

mīlle, *thousand*; plur., **mīllia**, *thousands.*

minor, us, *smaller* (**parvus**).

minuō, ere, uī, ūtum, *lessen, diminish.*

minus, adv., *less.*

mīror, ārī, ātus, *wonder, wonder at.*

missus, ūs, *act of sending*; **missū Caesaris**, *by the bidding of Caesar.*

mittō, ere, mīsī, missum, *send.*

mōbilis, e, *changeable, fickle.*

mōbilitās, ātis, f., *activity, quickness.*

moderor, ārī, ātus, *guide, control.*

mŏdŏ, adv., *only, just.*

modus, ī, m., *limit, manner, plan, style.*

mollis, e *soft, smooth* (of a beach).

moneō, ēre, uī, itum, *warn, advise.*

mōns, ntis, m., *mountain, mountain range.*

mōra, ae, f., *delay.*

moror, ārī, ātus, *delay.*

mors, mortis, f., *death.*

mōs, mōris, m., *custom, habit*; plur., *character.*

mōtus, ūs, *movement, motion*; *rising, disturbance.*

moveō, ēre, mōvī, mōtum, *move.*

mulier, eris, f., *woman.*

multitūdō, inis, f., *multitude.*

multō, adv. of degree, *by far, much.*

multum, adv. *greatly, to a great extent.*

multus, a, um, *much*; plur. *many.*

mūniō, īre, īvī, ītum, *fortify.*

mūnitiō, ōnis, f., *fortification, defence.*

N

nam, **namque**, conj., *for.*

nancīscor, ī, nactus, *find, obtain.*

nāscor, ī, nātus, *be born, produced.*

nātiō, ōnis, f., *race, tribe.*

nātūra, ae, f., *nature, character.*

nātus, a, um, *born.*

nātus, ūs, m., *birth* (used only in abl. **nātū**).

nauta, ae, m., *sailor.*

nāvālis, e, *naval.*

nāvigātiō, ōnis, f., *sailing, navigation.*

nāvigium, ī, n., *boat.*

nāvigō, āre, etc., *sail.*

nāvis, is, f., *ship.*

nē, conj. *lest, in order that not;* **nē . . . quidem**, *not even.*

-nē, interrog. enclitic, 1. in a direct question, merely a sign of interrogation, not translated; 2. in an indirect question, *whether.*

nec, **neque**, *neither, nor, and not* = **et non**.

necessāriō, adv., *of necessity; unavoidably.*

necesse, n., adj., *necessary, unavoidable.*

necō, āre, etc., *slay, kill.*

neglegō, ere, neglexī, neglectum, *omit, neglect, disregard.*

negō, āre, etc., *deny.*

negōtium, ī, n., *business, task.*

nēmō, dat. nēminī, acc. nēminem, *no one;* gen. and abl. not used; **nūllīus** and **nūllō** used instead.

neque, see **nec**.

neu, **nēve** = **et nē**, conj., *and that not, nor.*

nihil, **nīl**, indecl., *nothing.*

nihilō minus, *none the less* (**nihilō**, an adv. = *by nothing*).

nisi, *unless, if not.*

nōbilis, e, *of good birth, noble, renowned.*

nōbilitās, ātis, f., *nobility.*

noceō, ēre, uī, itum, *injure, hurt* (dat.).

noctū, adv., *by night.*

nocturnus, a, um, *nightly, nocturnal.*

nōlō, nōlle, nōluī, *am unwilling.*

nōmen, minis, n., *name.*

nōminātim, *by name, personally.*

nōn, *not.*

nōndum, *not yet.*

nōnnūllus, a, um, *some.*

nōnus, a, um, *ninth.*

noster, tra, trum, *our.*

novem, *nine.*

novitās, ātis, f., *newness, strangeness, novelty.*

novus, a, um, *fresh, new;* **novissimus**, *last.*

nox, noctus, f., *night.*

nūdō, āre, etc., *strip, bare.*

nūllus, a, um, gen. nūllīus, dat. nūllī, *no, none.*

numerus, ī, m., *number.*

nummus, ī, m., *coin, money.*

nunc, *now.*

numquam (**nunquam**), *never.*

nūntiō, āre, etc., *announce, report.*

nūntius, ī, m., 1. *messenger;* 2. *message.*

nūtus, ūs, m., *nod, sign.*

O

ob, *on account of* (acc.).

obeō, īre, īvī (iī), itum, *go to meet, encounter.*

obiciō (**objiciō**), ere, jēcī, jectum, *put in the way.*

observō, āre, etc., *observe, watch, heed.*

obsēs, idis, m. or f., *hostage.*
obsideō, ēre, sēdī, sessum, *besiege, invest.*
obsidiō, ōnis, f., *siege.*
obstinātē, *stubbornly, persistently.*
obstruō, ere, strūxī, strūctum, *barricade.*
obtemperō, āre, etc., *obey, submit to* (dat.).
obtineō, ēre, uī, tentum, *hold.*
occāsiō, ōnis, *opportunity, chance.*
occāsus, ūs, m., *setting* (of the sun).
occidēns, entis, *setting* (adj.); **occidēns (sōl)**, *the setting sun; the west.*
occīdō, ere, cīdī, cīsum (**caedō**, *cut*), *kill.*
occidō, ere, cidī, cāsum (**cadō**, *fall*), *fall, die.*
occulō, ere, occuluī, occultum, *hide, conceal.*
occultō, āre, etc., *hide, conceal.*
occupō, āre, etc., *occupy, seize.*
octāvus, a, um, *eighth.*
octingentī, *eight hundred.*
octō, *eight.*
octōgintā, *eight hundred.*
oculus, ī, m., *eye.*
offerō, ferre, obtulī, oblātum, *present.*
officium, ī, n., *duty, service.*
omnīnō, *altogether, at all.*
omnis, e, *all, every.*
onerārius, a, um, *of burden*; **onerāria (nāvis)**, *transport.*
onerō, āre, etc., *load.*
onus, eris, n., *load, cargo.*
opera, ae, *service, pains, exertion, effort.*
opīniō, ōnis, f., *belief, reputation.*
oportet, ēre, uit, impersonal, *it behooves, is necessary.*
opportūnē, *opportunely, happily.*
opportūnus, a, um, *suitable, opportune, fortunate.*
opprimō, ere, pressī, pressum, *surprise, overwhelm, crush.*
oppugnātiō, ōnis, f., *assault.*
oppugnō, āre, etc., *attack, assault.*
optimus, a, um, *best*, superl. of **bonus.**
opus, eris, n., *work; need, necessity* (lit. *a work to be attended to*).
ōra, ae, f., *coast.*
ōrātio, ōnis, f., *speech, language.*
ōrātor, ōris, m., *spokesman, messenger, speaker.*
orbis, is, m., *ring, circle.*
ōrdō, inis, m., *rank.*
orior, īrī, ortus, *arise, rise.*
ōrō, āre, etc., *beg, entreat.*
ōs, ōris, n., *mouth, face.*
ostendō, ere, ostendī, ostentum *or* ostēnsum, *show, display.*
ōvum, ī, n., *egg.*

P

pābulātor, ōris, m., *forager.*
pābulor, ārī, ātus, *forage.*
pācō, āre, etc., *pacify, quiet, subdue.*
paene, *almost, nearly.*
paenitet, ēre, uit, impersonal, *it repents*; **mē paenitet hūjus reī**, *I repent of this thing* (acc. of person; gen. of cause).
pāgus, ī, m., *canton, district.*
palam, *openly.*
palūs, palūdis, f., *marsh.*
par, paris, adj., *equal.*

parcō, ere, pepercī (supine **parsum** rare), *spare* (dat.).
parēns, entis, m. or f., *parent.*
pāreō, ēre, uī, *obey.*
pāriō, ere, peperī, partum, *bring forth, acquire.*
parō, āre, etc., *prepare.*
pars, partis, f., *part.*
partim, adv., *partly.*
parvulus, a, um, *little, very small.*
parvus, a, um, *small, little.*
passim, *everywhere.*
passus, ūs, m., *pace, double step* (about five feet).
pateō, āre, uī, *lie open.*
pater, tris, m., *father.*
patientia, ae, f., *patience, endurance.*
patior, patī, passus, *suffer, allow.*
paucitās, ātis, f., *fewness.*
paucī, ae, a, *few.*
paulātim, *gradually.*
paulisper, *a little while.*
paulō, adv., (*by*) *a little* (of difference), used with comparatives and **ante** and **post**.
paulum, adv., *a little, slightly* (of extent).
pāx, pācis, f., *peace.*
pecūnia, ae, f., *money.*
pecus, pecoris, n., *cattle* (collectively), *herd, flock.*
pecus, ūdis, f., *a single head of cattle.*
pedes, itis, m., *foot-soldier.*
pedester, tris, tre, adj., *on foot, on land.*
peditātus, ūs, m., *infantry.*
pellis, is, f., *skin, hide.*
pellō, ere, pepulī, pulsum, *drive.*
pendō, ere, pependī, pēnsum, *weigh, pay.*
per, *through* (acc.).
peragō, ere, ēgī, āctum, *transact throughout, complete, finish.*
percipiō, ere, cēpī, ceptum, *perceive, note.*
percontātiō, ōnis, f., *inquiry.*
percurrō, ere, currī, cursum, *run along.*
percutiō, ere, cussī, cussum (**quatiō**, *shake*), *strike violently, pierce.*
perdūcō, ere, dūxī, ductum, *lead through.*
pereō, īre, īvī (iī), itum, *perish.*
perequitō, āre, etc., *drive* or *ride through.*
perexiguus, a, um, *very small, scanty.*
perferō, ferre, tulī, lātum, *bring through, carry* (word); *endure.*
perficiō, ere, fēcī, fectum, *perform, accomplish, finish.*
perfidia, ae, f. *faithlessness, treachery.*
perfuga, ae, m., *deserter, fugitive.*
perfugiō, ere, fūgī, *flee.*
perfugium, ī, n., *refuge.*
periculum, ī, n., *danger, hazard, risk.*
perlegō, ere, lēgī, lēctum, *read through.*
permaneō, ēre, mānsī, mānsum, *remain, continue.*
permittō, ere, mīsī, missum, *intrust.*
permoveō, ēre, mōvī, mōtum, *alarm, disturb, influence.*
permulceō, ēre, mulsī, mulsum, *soothe, calm.*
perpaucī, ae, a, *very few.*

perrumpō, ere, rūpī, ruptum, *break through.*
perscrībō, ere, scrīpsī, scrīptum, *write fully.*
persequor, sequī, secūtus, *follow, pursue.*
persevērō, āre, etc., *persist.*
perspiciō, ere, spexī, spectum, *examine, reconnoitre, observe.*
persuadeō, ēre, suāsī, suāsum, *persuade* (dat. of person; acc. of thing).
perterreō, ēre, uī, itum, *alarm, frighten.*
pertimēscō, ere, timuī, *dread, fear.*
pertineō, ēre, uī, *stretch, extend, tend, pertain.*
perturbātiō, ōnis, f., *confusion, panic.*
perturbō, āre, etc., *disturb, perplex, throw into confusion.*
perveniō, īre, v[illegible]ī, ventum, with **ad**, *arrive at, reach.*
pēs, pedis, m., *foot.*
petō, ere, petīvī, petītum, *seek, ask, attack.*
pīlum, ī, n., *javelin.*
piscis, is, m., *fish.*
plācō, āre, etc., *appease.*
plānus, a, um, *level.*
plēbs, plēbis, f., *the common people.*
plēnus, a, um, *full.*
plērique, aeque, aque, *most, the majority.*
plērumque, adv., *for the most part, generally.*
plumbum, ī, n., *lead;* **plumbum album**, *tin.*
plūs, compar. of **multus**, *more.*
poena, ae, f., *penalty, punishment.*
polliceor, ērī, pollicitus, *promise.*
pondus, eris, n., *weight.*
pōnō, ere, posuī, positum, *place.*
pōns, pontis, m., *bridge.*
populor, ārī, ātus, *ravage, lay waste.*
populus, ī, m., *a people, nation* (not *people* in the plur. sense).
porrō, adv., *further, moreover.*
porta, ae, f., *gate, door.*
portō, āre, etc., *carry.*
portus, ūs, m., *port, harbor.*
poscō, ere, poposcī, *demand.*
possīdō, ere, sēdī, sessum, *gain possession of.*
possum, posse, potuī, *am able, can.*
post, prep. with acc., *after;* adv., *afterwards.*
posteā, adv., *afterwards.*
posteāquam, **postquam**, conj., *after.* (Often separated into adv. **post** and conj. **quam**).
posterus, a, um, *subsequent, following;* chiefly in phrase **posterō diē**, *on the following day.*
postpōnō, ere, posuī, positum, *defer, postpone.*
postrēmō, adv., *finally.*
postrīdiē, adv., contraction of **posterō diē**, *on the following day.*
postulō, āre, etc., *demand.*
potestās, ātis, f., *power, opportunity.*
praeacūtus, a, um, *sharp-pointed* (**prae**, *in front*).
praeceps, cipitis, *headlong, precipitous, steep.*
praeceptum, ī, n., *instruction, injunction.*
praecipiō, ere, cēpī, ceptum, *instruct, order.*

praecipitō, āre, etc., *throw headlong.*

praecipuus, a, um, *special.*

praeclūdō, ere, clūsī, clūsum, *block up in front, stop, hinder.*

praeda, ae, f., *booty, plunder.*

praedicō, āre, etc., *herald, proclaim, declare.*

praedīcō, ere, dīxī, dictum, *foretell, predict.*

praedor, ārī, ātus, *plunder.*

praefectus, ī, m., *officer* (see **praeficiō**).

praeficiō, ere, fēcī, fectum, *put over, appoint in command of* (acc. of person appointed; dat. of that over which).

praefīgō, ere, fīxī, fīxum, *fasten in front.*

praemittō, ere, mīsī, missum, *send forward, send ahead.*

praemium, ī, n., *reward.*

praeparō, āre, etc., *prepare beforehand.*

praescrībō, ere, scrīpsī, scrīptum, *direct, command.*

praesēns, entis, *present.*

praesentia, ae, f., *presence*; **in praesentiā**, *for the present.*

praesertim, *especially.*

praesidium, ī, n., *guard, protection, garrison.*

praestō, adv., *ready, at hand.*

praestō, āre, stitī, stitum, 1. *display, perform* (one's duty); 2. impersonal, **praestat**, *it is better.*

praesum, esse, fuī, *be over, be in command of* (dat.)

praeter, prep., *beyond, besides, except* (acc.).

praetereā, adv., *besides, moreover.*

praetermittō, ere, mīsī, missum, *let pass.*

praeūrō, ere, ussī, ustum, *burn in front, burn at the point.*

precem (from theoretical nom. **prex**), f., *prayer, entreaty.*

premō, ere, pressī, pressum, *press, hard press, crush.*

pretium, ī, n., *price, cost.*

prīdiē, *on the day before.*

prīmō, *at first, firstly.*

prīmum, *first, in the first place.*

prīmus, a, um, *first.*

prīnceps, cipis, m., *chief, chieftain*; as adj., *chief, foremost.*

prīncipātus, ūs, *chieftainship, leadership.*

prior, ōris, compar. degree, *first* (of two), *previous.*

prīstinus, a, um, *old-time, former.*

priusquam, conj., *before* (**prius**, adv., is often separated from **quam**, conj.).

prīvātim, adv., *privately; individually.*

prīvātus, a, um, *private.*

prō, *in front of; instead of; as the equivalent of, as, for; in return for, in recognition of.*

prōbō, āre, āvī ātum, *prove, approve.*

prōcēdō, ere, cessī, cessum, *advance.*

procul, *afar, at a distance.*

prōcurrō, ere, currī, cursum, *run forward.*

prōdeō, īre, īvī (iī) itum, *go forward.*

prōdō, ere, didī, ditum, 1. *hand down*; 2. *betray.*

prōdūcō, ere, dūxī, ductum, *lead forward, prolong.*
proelior, ārī, ātus, *fight.*
proelium, ī, n., *battle, fight.*
prōfectiō, ōnis, *departure, setting out.*
prōficiō, ere, fēcī, fectum, *accomplish.*
prōficīscor, ī, fectus, *set out.*
prōfiteor, ērī, fessus, *promise, declare.*
prōfluō, ere, fluxī, *flow onward.*
prōfugiō, ere, fūgī, *run away, flee.*
prōgredior, ī, gressus, *advance.*
prōhibeō, ēre, uī, itum, *prevent, hinder.*
prōiciō (prōjiciō), ere, jēcī, jectum, *throw forward.*
prōmissus, a, um, (of hair) *long, flowing.*
prōnūntiō, āre, etc., *declare, proclaim.*
prōpe, prep., *near* (acc.); adv., *nearly.*
prōpellō, ere, pulī, pulsum, *drive ahead, propel; rout.*
prōpinquus, a, um, *near, neighboring;* as noun, *kinsman, relative.*
prōpius, adv., compar., *nearer* (governs acc.).
propter, *on account of* (acc.).
proptereā, *therefore, on this account;* with **quod**, forms a phrase = *because.*
prōpugnō, āre, etc., *sally forth to fight.*
prōsequor, ī, secūtus, *follow, pursue.*
prōspectus, ūs, m., *sight, view.*
prōspiciō, ere, spexī, spectum, *see ahead, take precautions.*
prōtegō, ere, tēxī, tēctum, *guard in front.*
prōtinus, *forthwith, immediately.*
prōvehō, ere, vexī, vectum, *carry forward.*
prōvideō, ēre, vīdī, vīsum, *provide, provide for.*
prōvincia, ae, f., *province.*
proximus, a, um, superl. adj. *nearest, next* (**prope**).
pūblicē, adv., *as a nation.*
puer, erī, m., *boy;* **ā pueris**, *from boyhood.*
pugna, ae, f. *fight, battle.*
pugnō, āre, etc., *fight.*
pulvis, eris, m., *dust.*
pūrgō, āre, etc., *clear, excuse, exculpate.*
pūtō, āre, etc., *think, deem.*

Q

Q. = **Quīntus.**
quā, adv., *by which way, where* (really abl. sing. fem. of **quī**, modifying some such word as **viā** or **parte**).
quadrāgintā, *forty.*
quadringentī, ae, a, *four hundred.*
quaerō, ere, quaesīvī, quaesītum, *seek, inquire.*
quaestor, ōris, m., *quaestor* (a kind of quartermaster or adjutant general).
quam, 1. adv. of degree, *how;* 2. conj., *than, as;* with superl. it denotes the highest degree possible.
quamvīs, 1. adv., *however (much);* 2. conj., *although.*

quantō, adv., *by how much* (really an abl.).

quantum, adv., *how much, as much, as* (really an acc.).

quantus, a, um, *how much, how great; as much, as.*

quārē, *wherefore.*

quārtus, a, um, *fourth.*

quattuor, *four.*

-que, *and* (denoting close connection); **que . . . que**, *both . . . and.*

queror, querī, questus, *complain.*

quī, quae, quod, rel. pron., *who, which.*

quīcumque, quaecumque, quodcumque, indef. rel. pron., *whoever, whatever.*

quid? interrog. adv., *why?* (really adverbial acc. of **quis?**)

quīdam, quaedam, quiddam or quoddam, indef. pron. or adj., *a certain.*

quidem, adv., *indeed;* the phrase **nē . . . quidem** = *not even* (always placed so as to inclose the emphasized word or words).

quiēs, quiētis, f., *quiet, rest.*

quīn, conj., *but that, but, that,* often rendered *from* with negative verbs of hindering.

quīndecim, *fifteen.*

quīngentī, ae, a, *five hundred.*

quīnquāgintā, *fifty.*

quīnque, *five.*

quīntus, a, um, *fifth.*

quis or **quī** (quae), quid or quod? 1. interrog. pron. or adj., *who, which, what?* 2. after **nē, sī, nisi**, indef. pron. or adj., *any;* fem. **quae** is practically used only as an adj.; indef. may have **qua** instead of **quae.**

quispiam, quaepiam, quodpiam, indef. pron., *some one, any one.*

quisquam, quaequam, quidquam or quicquam, indef. pron., *any one, anything;* used only in a negative or virtually negative connection.

quisque, quaeque, quidque or quodque, indef. pron. or adj., *each, every.*

quīvīs, quaevīs, quidvīs or quodvīs, *any one whatever, any you like, any at all.*

quō, interrog. or rel. adv. of place, *whither* (really from an old acc.).

quō, conjunctive adv.; 1. = **ut eō**, *in order that,* with comparatives; 2. *by how much, the,* correlative of **eō**, *by that much, the,* as in the expression "the more, the merrier" (really an abl. of difference).

quoad, *until, as far as.*

quod, conj., 1. *because;* 2. *the fact that.*

quōminus, conj. ("*by which the less*"), with verbs of hindering rendered *from.*

quŏniam, *since, seeing that.*

quŏque, *also.*

quotannīs, *every year, annually.*

quotiēs (**quotiēns**), *as often as.*

R

rādo, ere, rāsī, rāsum, *shave.*

rārus, a, um, *thin, scattered, at intervals; in small parties.*

ratiō, ōnis, f., *manner, method, science.*

rebelliō, ōnis, f., *renewal of war.*
recēdō, ere, cessī, cessum, *retreat, retire.*
recēns, entis, *recent, fresh, new.*
receptus, ūs, m., *retreat.*
recipiō, ere, cēpī, ceptum, *take back*; **sē recipere**, *betake one's self, retreat, return, recover one's self.*
recitō, āre, etc., *read aloud.*
recuperō, āre, etc., *recover.*
recūsō, āre, etc., *object to, shrink from, refuse.*
redeō, īre, īvī (iī), itum, *return.*
redigō, ere, ēgī, āctum, *render, reduce.*
reditus, ūs, m., *return.*
redūcō, ere, dūxī, ductum, *lead back.*
referō, referre, rettulī, relātum, *bring back*; **pedem referō**, *retreat.*
reficiō, ere, fēcī, fectum, *repair.*
refugiō, ere, fūgī, *flee.*
regiō, ōnis, f., *region, district.*
rēgnō, āre, etc., *reign.*
rēgnum, ī, n., *kingly power; sovereignty.*
rēiciō (**rējiciō**), ere, jēcī, jectum, *drive back* (**jaciō**).
religiō, ōnis, f., *religious scruple.*
relinquō, ere, līquī, lictum, *leave.*
reliquus, a, um, *remaining, the rest.*
remaneō, ēre, mānsī, mānsum, *remain.*
rēmigō, āre, etc., *row.*
remigrō, āre, etc., *move away.*
remissus, a, um, *slack, mild.*
remittō, ere, mīsī, missum, *send back, let go.*
remollēscō, ere, *become soft, become enervated* (**mollis**, *soft*).
removeō, ēre, mōvī, mōtum, *move away.*
rēmus, ī, m., *oar.*
renūntiō, āre, etc., *bring back word, report.*
repellō, ere, reppulī, repulsum, *drive back.*
repente, *suddenly.*
repentīnus, a, um, *sudden.*
reperiō, īre, repperī, repertum, *find, discover.*
repetō, ere, petīvī (petiī), ītum, *seek again.*
reportō, āre, etc., *carry back.*
repōscō, ere, *demand back.*
rēs, reī, f., *thing, matter, affair.*
rescindō, ere, rescidī, rescissum (*cut back*), *cut down, break down* (bridge or wall).
resistō, ere, stitī, stitum, *resist, hold one's ground* (dat.).
respiciō, ere, spexī, spectum, *look back; look at.*
respondeō, ēre, spondī, spōnsum, *reply, answer.*
respōnsum, ī, n., *reply, answer.*
rēs pūblica, reī pūblicae, f., *the state, commonwealth, public interest.*
restituō, ere, restituī, restitūtum *restore.*
retineō, ēre, tinuī, tentum, *hold back, retain.*
retrahō, ere, trāxī, trāctum, *drag back.*
revertō, ere, vertī, versum, *return*; also dep., **revertor**, vertī, versus.
revocō, āre, etc., *call back.*
rēx, rēgis, m., *king.*

ripa, ae, f., *bank* (of a river).
rīvus, ī, m., *stream, river*.
rogō, āre, etc., *ask*.
rōta, ae, f., *wheel*.
rūmor, ōris, m., *report, rumor*.
rūrsus, adv., *back, again*.

S

saepe, *often*.
sagitta, ae, f., *arrow*.
salūs, ūtis, f., *safety*.
satis, *enough, quite, fairly*.
satisfaciō, ere, fēcī, factum, *give satisfaction, make amends*.
saucius, a, um, *wounded*.
scālae, ārum, f. plur., *ladder*.
scapha, ae, f., *skiff, boat*.
scindō, ere, scidī, scissum, *rend, tear*.
sciō, scīre, scīvī, scītum, *know*.
scrībō, ere, scrīpsī, scrīptum, *write*.
scūtum, ī, n., *shield*.
sē, **sēsē**, reflex. pron., *himself, itself, themselves*.
sēcius, *otherwise*.
secundum, prep., *according to, along* (acc.).
secundus, a, um, *second, favorable, following*.
sed, *but*.
sēdēs, is, f., *seat, abode, settlement*.
sēmita, ae, f., *path*.
senātus, ūs, *senate, council of elders* (**senex**).
sententia, ae, f., *opinion*.
sentiō, sentīre, sēnsī, sēnsum, *feel, perceive, am aware*.
sēparātus, a, um, *apart, distinct, separate*.
septem, *seven*.
septimus, a, um, *seventh*.
sequor, ī, secūtus, *follow*.
sermō, ōnis, m., *conversation, talk*.
sērō, adv., *late, too late*.
serō, ere, sēvī, satum, *sow, plant*.
serviō, īre, īvī (iī), ītum, *be slave to, serve* (dat.).
servitūs, ūtis, f., *slavery*.
servō, āre, etc., *keep, preserve* (acc.).
servus, ī, m., *slave*.
sēscentī or **sexcentī**, ae, a, *six hundred*.
seu, **sīve**, *either if . . . or if; whether . . . or* (always conditional, not interrog.).
sēvocō, āre, etc., *call aside*.
sex, *six*.
sī, *if*.
sīc, *so, thus*.
siccitās, ātis, f., *dryness, drought* (**siccus**).
sīcut, **sīcuti**, *just as*.
significātiō, ōnis, f., *indication, proof*.
significō, āre, etc., *indicate, show*.
signum, ī, n., *sign, signal; standard*.
silva, ae, f., *a wood, forest*.
silvestris, e, *woody, wooded*.
similis, e, *like*.
simul, *at the same time* (adv.); also = **simulatque** (-ac), *at the same time as, as soon as* (conj.).
simulātiō, ōnis, f., *pretence, artifice*.
simulō, āre, etc., *pretend*.
sin, *but if*.
sine, *without* (abl.).
singillātim, *singly, one by one*.
singulāris, e, *extraordinary, remarkable*.

singulī, ae, a, *one at a time.*
sinister, tra, trum, *on the left hand, left.*
sinistra, ae, f., *left hand.*
sinō, ere, sīvī, situm, *allow, permit.*
situs, ūs, m., *situation.*
socius, ī, m., *ally.*
sōl, sōlis, m., *sun.*
soleō, ēre, solitus sum, semi-dep., *am wont, am accustomed.*
sōlitūdō, inis, f., *solitude.*
sollicitō, āre, etc., *stir up, tempt, tamper with.*
sollicitus, a, um, *anxious, disturbed.*
sōlus, a, um, *alone.*
solvō, ere, solvī, solūtum, *loosen;* (**nāvem**) **solvō**, *set sail, cast off.*
spatium, ī, n., *space, distance, interval.*
speciēs, eī, f., *appearance.*
speculātor, ōris, m., *spy.*
speculātōrius, a, um, *for purposes of spying;* **nāvigium speculātōrium**, *spy-boat.*
spērō, āre, etc., *hope.*
spēs, spei, f., *hope.*
spoliō, āre, etc., *strip, rob of* (abl.).
sponte (an abl.), in the phrase **suā sponte**, *of his own accord.*
statim, *immediately.*
statiō, ōnis, f., *guard, outpost, picket.*
statuō, ere, uī, ūtum, *resolve, fix, determine.*
status, ūs, m., *position.*
stīpendium, ī, n., *soldier's pay, tribute.*
stō, stāre, stetī, stātum, *stand.*
strepitus, ūs, n., *noise, din.*
studeō, ēre, uī, *be eager for* (dat.).
studium, ī, n., *zeal, desire, enthusiasm.*
sub, *under, near, close up to* (abl. or acc.).
subdūcō, ere, dūxī, ductum, *haul up, beach* (a ship).
subductiō, ōnis, f., *hauling up, beaching.*
subfodiō, ere, fōdī, fossum, *stab beneath* (**fodiō**, *dig*).
subiciō (**subjiciō**), ere, jēcī, jectum, *subject, expose to.*
subitō, *suddenly.*
sublātus, perf. part. of **tollō**.
subministrō, āre, etc., *supply.*
submittō, ere, mīsī, missum, *send to the aid.*
submoveō, ēre, mōvī, mōtum, *remove.*
subsequor, ī, secūtus, *follow up closely.*
subsidium, ī, n., *support, assistance; resource, reinforcement.*
subsistō, ere, stitī, *hold out, stand firm.*
subsum, esse, fuī, *am close at hand.*
subveniō, īre, vēnī, ventum, *come to the aid of, succor* (dat.).
succēdō, ere, cessī, cessum, *come close up, take the place of, succeed to* (dat.).
succīdō, ere, cīdī, cīsum, *cut down* (**caedō**).
succurrō, ere, currī, cursum, *hasten to the aid of, help* (dat.).
sudis, is, f., *stake.*
sum, esse, fuī, *am.*
summa, ae, f., *whole, summit, chief place, supremacy.*
summus, a, um, superl. of **supe-**

rus, *highest, topmost, greatest;* **summus mōns**, *top of the mountain.*

superior, ōris, compar. of **superus**, *higher; former, previous.*

superō, āre, etc., *overcome.*

supplicātiō, ōnis, f., *public thanksgiving.*

supplicium, ī, n., *punishment.*

suprā, *above* (prep. with acc. or adv.).

suspiciō, ōnis, f., *suspicion.*

suspiciō, ere, spexi, spectum, *suspect.*

suspicor, ārī, ātus, *suspect.*

sustentō, āre, etc., *support.*

sustineō, ēre, uī, tentum, *hold up, hold in check, withstand, hold one's ground.*

suus, a, um, *one's own, his, her, its, their* (own), referring to the subject.

T

tālea, ae, f., *bar.*

tālis, e, *such* (referring to kind).

tam, adv. of degree, *so.*

tamen, *however, nevertheless, still.*

Tamesis, i, m., *the Thames.*

tametsī, *although.*

tandem, *at last.*

tantulus, a, um, *so small.*

tantum, adv., *so much; only.*

tantus, a, um, *so great, so much.*

tardius (compar. of **tardē**, *slowly*), *too slowly, rather slowly.*

tegō, ere, tēxī, tēctum, *cover, hide.*

tēlum, ī, n., *weapon, missile.*

temerē, *rashly.*

temeritās, ātis, f., *rashness.*

tēmō, ōnis, m., *pole* (of a chariot).

tempestās, ātis, f., 1. *weather;* 2, *storm.*

tempus, oris, n., *time.*

teneo, ēre, uī, tentum, *hold, keep.*

tentō = **temptō**, āre, etc., *try, make trial of, attempt, make an attempt upon; tamper with, tempt, incite.*

tenuis, e, *weak, slender, frail.*

tergum, ī, n., *back.*

terra, ae, f., *land, earth.*

terreō, ēre, uī, itum, *frighten, terrify.*

territō, āre, etc., *frighten, terrify.*

terror, ōris, m., *terror, alarm.*

tertius, a, um, *third.*

testūdō, inis, f., *tortoise; testudo*, a protection to soldiers formed by locking shields overhead; a movable shed.

timeō, ere, uī, *fear, dread* (acc.); *fear for* (dat.).

timidē, *timidly.*

timor, ōris, m., *fear, dread.*

tolerō, āre, etc., *bear, endure.*

tollō, ere, sustulī, sublātum, *lift, pick up, raise, remove, weigh* (anchor).

tormentum, ī, n., *engine of war* (**torqueō**, *hurl*).

torreō, ēre, uī, tostum, *scorch.*

tot, indecl., *so many.*

tōtus, a, um, *whole, all.*

trabs, is, f., *beam.*

trādō, ere, didī, ditum, *hand over, surrender; hand down.*

trādūcō, ere, dūxī, ductum, *lead across; take across.*

trājectus, ūs, m., *crossing, passage.*

trāiciō (**trājiciō**), ere, jēcī, jectum, *pierce, transfix.*

tranquillitās, ātis, f., *calm.*
trāns, *across* (acc.).
trānseō, īre, īvī (iī), itum, *cross.*
trānsferō, ferre, tulī, lātum, *carry across.*
trānsfīgō, ere, fīxī, fīxum, *pierce, transfix.*
trānsitus, ūs, m., *crossing, passage.*
trānsmarīnus, a, um, *from across the sea.*
trānsmissus, ūs, m., *crossing.*
trānsportō, āre, etc., *carry across, transport.*
Transrhēnānus, a, um, *living beyond the Rhine.*
trecentī, ae, a, *three hundred.*
trepidō, āre, etc., *be in a panic, be in hurried excitement.*
trēs, tria, *three.*
tribūnus, ī, m, *tribune.*
tribuō, ere, uī, ūtum, *assign, pay.*
tribūtum, ī, m., *tribute.*
trīduum, ī, n., *period of three days* (trēs, diēs).
triennium, ī, n., *period of three years* (**trēs**, **annus**).
trīnī, ae, a, *three each.*
tripertītō, adv., *in three divisions.*
triplex, triplicis, *threefold, triple.*
triquetrus, tra, trum, *triangular.*
tueor, ērī, tūtus (tuitus), *watch, guard, protect.*
tum, *then, at that time.*
tumultus, ūs, m., *disturbance, rising.*
tumulus, ī, m., *mound, hill.*
turma, ae, *squadron* (of horse).
turpis, e, *base, disgraceful.*
turris, is, f., *tower.*
tūtus, a, um, *safe, protected.*

U

ubi, *where, when.*
ulcīscor, ī, ultus, *punish, take vengeance on.*
ūllus, a, um, *any* (adj. corresponding to pron. **quisquam** in a negative connection).
ūlterior, ius, *farther.*
ūltimus, a, um, *farthest, last.*
ūltrō, *of one's own accord, voluntarily.*
ūnā, adv., *together.*
unde, *whence.*
ūndecimus, a, um, *eleventh.*
undique, *from all parts, on all sides.*
ūniversus, a, um, *all, as a whole.*
ūnus, a, um, *one.*
ūsque, with **ad**, *right to.*
ūsus, ūs, m., *use, advantage, practice, experience.*
ut, uti, 1. *that, in order that* (of purpose), with the subjunctive; 2. *that, so that* (of result), with the subjunctive; 3. *as, when*, with the indicative.
ūter, tra, trum ? *which of two ?*
ūterque, utraque, utrumque, *each of two* (the sing. of this renders the Eng. plur. *both*).
ūtilis, e, *useful.*
ūtilitās, ātis, f., *expediency.*
ūtor, ī, ūsus, *use, experience, enjoy* (abl.); **studiō ūtor**, *show zeal.*
utrimque, adv., *on both sides.*
uxor, ōris, f., *wife.*

V

vacō, āre, etc., *lie vacant, be vacant.*
vadum, ī, n., *shallow, ford.*

vagor, ārī, ātus, *roam, wander.*
valeō, ēre, uī, itum, *be strong, able.*
vallis, is, f., *valley.*
vāllum, ī, n., *rampart, wall* (of earth).
vāstō, āre, etc., *lay waste, devastate.*
vectīgal, ālis, n., *tax.*
vectīgālis, e, *tributary* (*tax-paying*).
vectōrius, a, um ... *used for burden, of burden.*
vel, *either, or.*
vēlōcitās, ātis, f., *swiftness.*
vēlōciter, *swiftly* (**vēlōx**).
vēnātiō, ōnis, f., *hunting.*
vēndō, ere, didī, ditum, *sell* (**vēnum, dō**).
veniō, īre, vēnī, ventum, *come.*
ventitō, āre, etc., *come often, keep coming* (frequentative of **veniō**).
ventus, ī, m., *wind.*
verbum, ī, n., *word.*
vereor, ērī, veritus, *fear.*
vergō, ere, *incline, turn, lie toward.*
vērō, *truly, but indeed, but.*
versor, ārī, ātus, *move,* or *be engaged* (in any sphere).
vērus, a, um, *true, fair, just.*
vesper, erī, m., *evening.*
vestīgium, ī, n., *footprint, trace;* **ē vestīgiō**, *on the spot, instantly.*
vestiō, īre, īvī, ītum, *clothe.*
vestītus, ūs, m., *clothing.*
vetō, āre, vetuī, vetitum, *forbid.*
vetus, veteris, *old.*
vexō, āre, etc., *harass.*
via, ae, f., *way, road.*
viātor, ōris, m., *traveller.*
vicem (acc. of defective noun), *turn, alternation;* **in vicem**, *in turn.*
vīcēnī, ae, a, *twenty each.*
vīciēs (**vīciēns**), adv., *twenty times.*
victor, ōris, m., *conqueror;* or as adj., *victorious.*
victōria, ae, f., *victory.*
vīcus, ī, m., *village.*
videō, ēre, vīdī, vīsum, *see;* pass. **videor**, *am seen* or *seem;* **vīsum est**, *it seemed good.*
vigilia, ae, f., *watch* (part of the night), *watching, remaining awake at night.*
vīgintī, *twenty.*
vincō, ere, vīcī, victum, *conquer, defeat.*
vinculum, ī, n., *chain.*
vīnum, ī, n., *wine.*
vir, virī, m., *man, husband.*
virgō, inis, f., *virgin, maiden.*
virtūs, ūtis, f., *manliness, virtue, valor, excellence.*
vīs, acc. vim, abl. vī, pl. vīrēs, f., *force, violence;* plur., (*bodily*) *strength.*
vīta, ae, f., *life.*
vītō, āre, etc., *avoid.*
vitrum, ī, n., *woad* (a vegetable dye).
vīvō, ere, vīxī, victum, *live.*
vix, *scarcely.*
vocō, āre, etc., *call, summon.*
volō, velle, voluī, *wish, am willing.*
voluntās, ātis, f., *will, intention, wish.*
voluptās, ātis, f., *pleasure.*
vōx, vōcis, f., *voice, utterance.*
vulgō, *commonly.*
vulgus, ī, n., *common people.*
vulnerō, āre, etc., *wound.*
vulnus, eris, n., *wound;* plur., *casualties.*

VERGIL

AENEID, BOOK II, 1–505

VERGIL, AENEID II

INTRODUCTION

PUBLIUS VERGILIUS MARO

70 B.C. — 19 B.C.

Life and Works

Early Education. — Publius Vergilius Maro[1] was born in 70 B.C. in Andes, a settlement of Cisalpine Gaul or, as we should call it, northern Italy, near Mantua. His parents were humble rustics, but gave their son the best education their means would allow. At the age of twelve he was sent to school in Cremona; at sixteen, having assumed the "toga virilis" (or garb of manhood), he went to Mediolanum (Milan). Here he remained one year. Thence in 53 B.C. he removed to Rome for instruction in rhetoric and philosophy. His tastes favored philosophy rather than rhetoric.

The Bucolics or Eclogues. — How long he stayed in Rome we do not know, but he must have made the acquaintance of some very influential men. In 41 B.C. we find him back in Cisalpine Gaul, living on his farm. From this he was ejected by one of the soldiers to whom

[1] **Publius** was his given or individual name, like John or James; **Vergilius** was the name of his wider family or clan (Latin, *gens*); **Maro** was the name of his immediate family or subdivision of the *gens*. The Anglicized form of his name is more commonly spelt **Virgil**; but **Vergil** is also used and is more strictly classical.

land had been assigned by the victorious Triumvirs.[1] At this time be began the writing of his earliest important poems, the *Bucolics* or *Eclogues*.[2] They are ten short pastoral poems, dealing with shepherd life or with passing events as viewed from the standpoint of a simple rustic. The *Eclogue* known as the first had for its theme his gratitude to Octavianus for the restitution of his farm from which a soldier had expelled him. Another deals with his friendship for Asinius Pollio, governor of the district, to whose influence he largely owed the protection accorded him in regard to his property. The *Eclogues* were written between 43 and 37 B.C.

The Georgics. — The scene of his life now shifted to Rome and Naples, where he made the acquaintance of Maecenas, afterwards the prime minister of Augustus. During this period he also travelled in southern Italy and probably in Greece. Maecenas took Vergil, along with other literary men of the time, under his protection, and Vergil became so intimate with him as to introduce the younger poet Horace to his notice. At the suggestion of Maecenas, Vergil wrote the *Georgics* (Greek, γεωργός, a husbandman), a *didactic poem* on the chief operations of farming. Book I deals with field culture or the growing of grain; Book II, with trees and vines; Book III, with cattle and horses; and Book IV, with bees. The object was not so much to give instruction as to ennoble or idealize agriculture as the favorite occupation of well-to-do Romans of his day when not engaged in war. Maecenas probably wished, by the help

[1] See Roman History.

[2] Minor poems of an earlier date are attributed to him; namely, the *Morētum*; the *Cōpa*; the *Culex*; the *Ciris*. His authorship of these, however, is doubtful.

of Vergil, to turn cultured men's thoughts away from war and thus lay the foundation for the policy of peace which afterwards characterized the rule of Augustus. The poem was completed and read to Augustus in 29 B.C., after the triumphant return of the emperor from the East.

NOTE. — To understand Vergil's life, the pupil should take his Roman History and study carefully the events connected with the death of Julius Caesar, the Second Triumvirate, the quarrel between Antony and Octavianus, and the magnificent rule of the latter as the Emperor Augustus.

The Aeneid, 29–19 B.C. — In 29 B.C., immediately after the assumption of the title of Augustus and all the imperial dignity it implied, Vergil was asked to undertake a great national *epic.* He chose as his theme the legendary connection between the ancestry of the Romans and Aeneas, one of the heroes of the Trojan war. The poem was called "Aeneis" or *The Aeneid.* The object was *political.* It sought: (1) to impress upon the Romans the grandeur of their ancestry as derived from the Trojan prince Aeneas, and through him from the gods (Aeneas was reputed to be the son of the goddess Venus); (2) to reconcile the Romans to the rule of Augustus as the lineal descendant of Aeneas and one who inherited his princely virtues.

Vergil's Death. — In 19 B.C., *i.e.* after ten years' labor, the *Aeneid* had been completed in the rough. Vergil intended to revise and polish it, but on returning from Greece, where he had met Augustus on his way home from the East, he was suddenly taken ill with fever and died at Brundusium. He was buried at Naples, and the following is said to have been the epitaph written by himself: —

"MANTVA ME GENVIT, CALABRI RAPVERE, TENET NVNC PARTHENOPE: CECINI PASCVA RVRA DVCES."

"Born at Mantua; died at Brundusium; buried at Naples; author of *Bucolics*, *Georgics*, and the *Aeneid*."

Publication of the Æneid. — There is a commonly accepted story that on his death Vergil bequeathed his writings to his friends, Varius and Tucca, with instructions that they should publish nothing that he had not declared ready for publication. In the case of *The Æneid*, which Vergil had wished them to burn, they disregarded his behest and gave the poem to the world after making such corrections as were absolutely necessary. In thus acting as his editors, they complied with the request of Augustus.

Personal Characteristics. — Vergil is described as large-framed, of a dark complexion and awkward in manner and appearance. Still he is reputed to have been an excellent reader. In private intercourse he was regarded as one of the gentlest souls of that select coterie of literary friends that graced the court of Augustus and enjoyed the hospitality of Maecenas. His health was never good, a weakness of the throat and a proneness to headache being his constant afflictions.

Literary Style. — Vergil was *scrupulously painstaking* in composition. He devoted himself to but one work at a time, composed a limited number of verses each day, and laboriously revised everything he wrote. The *gentleness* and *tender refinement* of his disposition found expression in his writings. He produced *little that was stirring or impassioned*, *picturesqueness* in description and

a sort of *dreamy, half-melancholy pathos* being his leading characteristics.

Even the young student will soon discover in Vergil's style certain *mannerisms: e.g.* a fondness of minutely elaborated *similes;* the use of *hendiadys,* a sort of redundancy by which "one idea is represented as two"; the use of the *plural* where one would expect the singular.

The student, as he translates, should study incidentally the beauties of poetic expression found in Vergil. The story, of course, of the *Aeneid* appeals to the imagination. The melody and rhythm of the heroic verse constitute a charm to the musical ear, and attention to the verse structure ought to be no small part of the study of the text. Vergil's word pictures may also be made a profitable basis of study, as regards *vividness of detail* and *method.*

It should be remembered also by young students that they are reading one of the masterpieces of the world's literature, — a poem which became famous immediately after its publication, and retained that fame down through the ages, ranking with such immortal works as Homer's *Iliad,* Milton's *Paradise Lost,* and Dante's *Inferno.*

It is a *grand national epic.* It was studied as a textbook by Roman boys at school in Vergil's own times. In the Middle Ages Vergil's was a name to conjure with, and his writings were held in almost the same reverential awe as Holy Scripture.

THE STORY OF THE AENEID

The City of Troy. — There was in ancient times a rich and powerful city called Ilium, or Troja (Troy), situated

on a peninsula in the northwest of Asia Minor, near the Hellespont, or Dardanelles. Modern excavations have revealed the fact that on the same site more than one city of different dates have fallen to ruin and been buried by the drifting sands. To us the existence of Troy is *poetical*, not historical, though founded on historical fact. The Trojans were evidently of Greek origin, and were to that part of Asia Minor an imperial race. At the time of our romance, King Priam ruled, and the splendor of the city was far-famed.

The Trojan War.—According to Homer and other early Greek poets, there was a great war of ten years' duration between Greece and Asia, called the Trojan War, approximately dated 1090–1080 B.C. The beginnings of Greek history, as distinguished from legend or romance, are to be sought about 700 or 800 B.C. The following is the poetical version of the origin of the war. The Goddess of Strife or Discord had offered as a prize a golden apple, inscribed, "to the fairest," which was claimed by each of the three deities, Venus, Juno, and Minerva. Paris, a son of King Priam, on account of a prophecy at his birth, that he would be the ruin of his country, had been exposed upon Mt. Ida, near Troy, and had been brought up as a shepherd boy. He was tending his flocks one day, when along came the three goddesses, disputing as to their claims to the Apple of Discord. They agreed to make Paris, who had grown up a beautiful youth, the umpire. Bribed by Venus by the promise of the most beautiful woman in the world for wife, he awarded the prize to her, the Goddess of Love and Beauty, thus incurring for himself and his ill-fated city the undying displeasure of the slighted two. Minerva's bribe of

wisdom and Juno's of wealth and power he had rejected.

Venus made good her promise in the mischievous style that might have been expected. Paris, now reinstated in his princely rights, was on a visit to the court of Menelaus, king of Sparta. Menelaus was absent from home. His queen, Helen, prompted by Venus, became enamoured of Paris, and accompanied him back to Troy. Helen had been the much-sought-after beauty of all Greece. Many princes had sued for her hand, and at her betrothal all had sworn to her father to protect the honor of the man to whom she should be given as wife. Menelaus now reminded them of their oath. A mighty army and fleet were assembled from all Greece, under the command of Agamemnon, brother of Menelaus, and king of Argos and Mycenae. Troy was invested. Achilles, Ulysses, Diomede, the two Ajaxes, and many other valiant heroes brought each his quota of men. Ships were drawn up on shore and a camp was fortified. For ten years the siege lasted, and on the plain between the hillside and the sea many bloody battles were fought, in which, the poets say, the gods in form of men did combat on either side. Hector, Priam's son, and strongest champion of Troy, was slain by Achilles. Achilles in his turn was laid low by a shaft from the bow of Paris, which struck the hero in his only vulnerable spot, namely, the one where his mother, the sea-nymph Thetis, had grasped his heel when she dipped him, an infant, in the river Styx to insure his immortality. Achilles was succeeded by his son Pyrrhus, or Neoptolemus.

But the hopes of the Greeks flagged. Finally, by a ruse,—the trick of the Wooden Horse,—the city was

taken and burnt. King Priam was slain at his own family altar.

Aeneas founds Rome. — Aeneas, a prince of royal blood, collects a band of refugees and, with his aged father, Anchises, and young son, Ascanius, or Iulus, starts out in quest of a new home. He is the agent of Fate. The destinies and household gods of Troy have been intrusted to him by the shade of Hector. In twenty ships for seven years he wanders round the shores of the Mediterranean, blindly seeking some distant western land. Sicily is visited, and here Anchises dies. A storm drives the fleet on the shores of Carthage, then a newly building city on the coast of Africa. Dido, a Phoenician princess, has founded the city, which is destined to be the rival of another city, Rome, as yet unbuilt. Aeneas, shipwrecked, strays into Carthage, meets the queen, and is received as a royal guest. Venus again plots mischief. Dido's heart — to protect Aeneas from ill usage in a barbarous land — is inflamed with love for Aeneas. Here the Aeneid begins.

The Aeneid. — **Book I** takes up the story with the wreck of Aeneas' fleet off Carthage. Aeneas is invited to linger in the city. A banquet is given in his honor. Aeneas at the close is asked to tell the story of the Fall of Troy and his subsequent wanderings.

Books II and III are Aeneas' story, II of the destruction of Troy, and III of his wanderings — the Latin Odyssey.

Book IV tells of the love of Dido, Aeneas' departure from Carthage, and the suicide of the queen.

Book V describes the return to Sicily and the anniversary games in memory of the death of Anchises.

Book VI recounts the arrival at the shores of Italy — the "promised land" — and the descent of Aeneas through

the Cumaean Cave into the lower world and his interview with the shade of his dead father, Anchises.

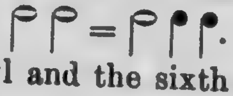
Books VII–XII form the triumphant close. Aeneas lands on the shores of Latium, in the kingdom of Latinus. The king's daughter, Lavinia, is betrothed to Aeneas, but Turnus, a native prince, who is also a suitor for the hand of Lavinia, disputes the claim of Aeneas, and makes war upon the Trojans. After a long and bitter struggle, the latter are successful, and Aeneas slays his rival Turnus. Aeneas thus becomes a Latian prince, and the prophecy is fulfilled. The remnant of Troy has found a new home in the West.

Three hundred years later, 753 B.C., Romulus, a descendant of Aeneas, founds the city of Rome.

Metre of the Aeneid

1. The difference between modern and classical verse should be understood. The former is based upon *accent*, the latter was based upon *time*, *quantity*, or the *length of syllables*. Of course in the case of long syllables accent played a subsidiary part even in classical verse.

2. Dividing a verse into feet or measures (the same as *bars* in music) is called *scanning*.

3. Vergil's metre, like that of Homer, is the **dactylic hexameter**, or six-foot measure, having the *dactyl* (— ◡◡) as its basis. In the first four feet *spondees* (— —) may be substituted for dactyls on the same principle as in music, . The fifth is almost invariably a dactyl and the sixth a spondee or unfinished dactyl in the form of a *trochee* (— ◡).

NOTE. — In all classic verse the final syllable of a line or verse might be long or short at pleasure. The pause at the end of the

verse admitted of a certain elasticity in the final quantity, or perhaps was treated as a *rest* in music.

Scale

4. The following is the scale of the ductylic hexameter: —

1	2	3	4	5	6
— ⏑ ⏑	— ⏑ ⏑	— ⏑ ⏑	— ⏑ ⏑	— ⏑ ⏑	— —
— —	— —	— —	— —		— ⏑ ∧

To get the cadence of this verse the student ought to read several lines of Longfellow's *Evangeline*, which is one of the few successful modern imitations.

5. A verse with a *spondee in the fifth place* is so rare as to be called a **spondaic verse** (see v. 68).

Quantity

The *quantity* of a syllable (or the *time* taken in its pronunciation) depended (1) upon the actual quantity of the *vowel contained*, or (2) upon the *consonantal close* of the syllable. The following rules of quantity will be useful:

Rules for Long or Short Syllables.

1. A syllable containing a naturally long vowel (see Grammar) is of course **long**.

2. A syllable in which a short vowel is followed by *two consonants* (*not a mute and liquid*, e.g. **pr, cl, tr**) is **long**.

The vowel is then sometimes said to be "long by position." In this edition only the vowels naturally long are marked in the text. The student must cultivate the habit of distinguishing the syllables made long by "position," and should familiarize himself with the natural quantities of vowels so as to be able to scan independently.

3. A syllable in which a short vowel is followed by a *mute and liquid* may be **long** or **short**.

If the consonants belong to different words the syllable will most probably be long.

4. A vowel followed by a vowel is usually **short**, — exceptions Aenēās, ipsīus, ūnīus, etc.

Elision

Final syllables are sometimes to be *slurred* or rapidly passed over. They are then said to be *elided* and do not count in the metre.

Rule for Elision.

A final vowel or final syllable ending in **m** is elided when the next word begins with (*a*) a vowel or (*b*) the letter **h**, e.g.:

cōnticu|er(e) ŏm|nēs īn|tēnti|qu(e) ora ten|ebat

ĕt brevi|tĕr Tro|jae sŭp|rem(um) aud|ire lab|orem

quămqu(am) ani|mŭs memin|īss(e) hor|rĕt luc|tuque re|fugit

In the above, study (*a*) the elisions; (*b*) the syllables "long by position."

Note. — In the scanning marked above, the "long" mark extending over a vowel and a consonant, with a "short" mark over the vowel, means that the vowel is naturally short but that the syllable is "long by position."

Caesura

Theoretically the term "caesura" is applied to any "cutting" or break occurring when one word ends and

another begins within the same foot, e.g. after *conticuēre*, after *omnēs*, and after *ōra* in the first verse of Book II quoted above.

The caesura, or **caesural pause**, is a break somewhere about the middle of the line. This is a regular part of the rhythm and is only slightly variable. It is *usually in the third foot;* occasionally, in the fourth.

The following shows the caesura after *omnēs:*

conticu|ēre om|nēs ‖ in|tentī|qu(e) ōra ten|ēbat

In the following line the caesura comes in the fourth foot, after *Aenēās:*

Inde to|rō pater | Aenē|ās ‖ sīc | ōrsus ab | altō

STORY OF BOOK II

Book I has told of the wreck near Carthage, of Aeneas' reception by Queen Dido, and the banquet held in his honor. The closing lines of Book I relate how the queen, after the feasting is over, calls upon Aeneas to tell the story of the fall of Troy and his subsequent wanderings.

1-56

A hush falls upon the revelling throng. Aeneas begins: "Woe unutterable, O queen, thou biddest me renew, how the Greeks o'erthrew the power of Troy and her lamentable kingdom. . . . Although my mind shudders at the remembrance and has recoiled in grief, I will begin."

The Horse and Laocoön. — He tells of the discouragement of the Greeks after ten years of fruitless strife; their last desperate artifice — the building of the Wooden Horse, filled with armed soldiers — and their pretended departure for home. Really, they withdrew only to the island of Tenedos to await developments. The Trojans

rej ce at their departure, saily forth from the city, and in exultation view the scene of the deserted camp and mock the ugly monster left behind. Some propose to destroy it. But in an evil moment, Thymoetes, through either treachery or folly, suggests that it be brought within the city. Seeing the uncertainty of the multitude, Laocoön (Lā-ŏc-o-on), a priest, warns them against the proposal, and to show his contempt, hurls a mighty spear at the hollow side of the beast. It gives forth an ominous sound. But the Trojans heed not.

57-198

Sinon. — Just here a youth, a Greek, Sinon by name, is dragged before King Priam. He has surrendered himself to some shepherds. He tells a pitiful tale of persecution by Ulysses and condemnation to death in the Grecian camp. He excites their pity, and the king, promising him the freedom of the city, bids him explain the meaning of the Horse. This is his opportunity. Cunningly he describes it as a substitute offering for the Palladium (Image of Pallas, or Minerva), which, having fallen from heaven, had been preserved as a sure protection by the Trojans, but which had been stolen from the temple of the goddess by the unholy hands of Diomede and Ulysses. If the Trojans violate or destroy the Horse, destruction for Troy has been prophesied by Calchas, the seer. But if, on the contrary, they bring the Horse into the city, then doom awaits the land of Greece. The Trojans are persuaded.

199-231

Laocoön's Fate. — As if to confirm the infatuation of the Trojans, a horrible portent is sent by the angry god-

dess. Twin serpents leave the shore of Tenedos and swim the sea, with blood-red manes and eyes of fire and hissing tongues rising high above the waves. Awe-struck stand the Trojans. The horrid creatures make for the shore, single out Laocoön and his two sons, and in their slimy coils strangle them and feed upon their limbs. They then seek the shelter of the temple and nestle at the feet of the goddess. The meaning is plain. It is a punishment for violation of the monster.

232-249

The Horse Enters.—No longer doubting, the Trojans proceed to bring the Horse into the city. A breach is made in the walls. Hempen ropes are hitched to the neck of the beast, wheels are placed beneath the feet, and, with dance and song, youths and maidens draw the structure, teeming with ruin, right into the heart of the city. A sound of arms is four times heard within, but the Trojans heed not. Cassandra, the frenzied daughter of King Priam, gifted with prophecy, warns them, but as usual her warning is not believed.

250-271

The Fleet returns; Sinon opens the Horse by Night.—In drunken slumber the Trojans rest from their revels. Night "in deep shade enshrouds both earth and sky and the wiles of the Greeks." The ships steal back from Tenedos. A torch signal from the commander's vessel prompts Sinon to draw the bolts and release the warriors from their voluntary prison. The guards of the gates are slain, the Greeks from outside pour in, and the work of destruction begins.

272-297

Hector's Shade warns Aeneas. — In the dead of night by Aeneas' bedside stands the spirit of the slain Hector, bearing the household gods of Troy. Disdaining answer to Aeneas' fond inquiries as to the cause of his long absence and squalid appearance, Hector informs Aeneas of the destruction now in progress, and urges him to flee and seek a new home for the household gods he now gives him.

298-434

Aeneas rushes into Battle. — Awakened, Aeneas rushes to his father's housetop in the suburbs, removed from the scene of strife, and sees in the distance the flames and hears the shouts and groans of men in combat. A mad desire to hurry to the rescue seizes him. Forth he rushes in arms, he knows not whither. Priest Panthus tells him that the city is doomed. Onward he rushes to the citadel. Companions gather round him, last of all Coroebus, the betrothed of Cassandra. Aeneas inflames them to desperate deeds, and many Greeks are laid low. Androgeos and his party are suddenly entrapped and slain. Their Grecian armor is taken as a disguise, and under this protection Aeneas and his men attack and kill many Greeks. The Greeks begin to flee, but an accident turns the tide of battle against the little band of Trojans. Coroebus sees Cassandra being dragged from the temple of Minerva. He rushes to her rescue, followed by his companions. They are now subjected to a twofold slaughter. Their friends on the roof of the shrine overwhelm them with darts, and the Greeks, returning, recog-

nize the deception. Back from all parts of the city flock the Greeks. Aeneas' party is broken up and most of them are slain.

435–505

Destruction of Priam's Palace. — Resistance in the streets now being impossible, Aeneas passes to the palace of the king. Here the whole fury of the Greeks has centred. Pyrrhus, son of Achilles, in glittering armor leads on the attack. Above, on the roof, the Trojans offer desperate resistance, hurling down towers on the Greeks below. But numbers tell. Pyrrhus with battle-axe smashes in the great front door. An opening is forced, and women's shrieks resounding through the halls tell the story of capture and destruction. "Door-posts, proudly decked with barbaric gold and spoils, have fallen; the Greeks hold all where the fire fails."

506–804

Priam is slain; Aeneas flees. — The remainder of Book II describes the final tragedy in the fall of Troy; namely, the death of Priam, ruthlessly slain at his own altar by Pyrrhus. Sickened by the sight, Aeneas turns to his home, resolved to flee. On his way he espies Helen crouching in terror at the altar of Vesta. Of Vesta? — what an irony of fate? Vesta, the goddess of purity and chastity, protect a guilty woman? In rage he is about to slay her, when he is suddenly restrained by his goddess mother, who, true to her erring *protégée,* diverts the anger of her son and reveals to him by a sort of magic picture the gods — not Helen — as the true destroyers of Troy. Poor Helen is but the unhappy instrument of Fate in all this pitiful tragedy.

Thoughts of home, of aged father, tender wife, and infant son requiring protection, displace all desire for revenge on the guilty Helen. Home he hastens. With difficulty he persuades his obstinate sire, Anchises, lame and helpless, to accompany him in flight. With Anchises on his shoulders, the boy Ascanius (or Iulus) holding him by the hand, and wife Creusa hurrying after them, Aeneas passes through the dangerous streets seeking the open country. In the confusion and darkness Creusa is lost. On reaching the outskirts of the city, Aeneas discovers the loss and, frantic, rushes back in quest of his wife. Suddenly she appears to him as a phantom, bidding him be reconciled to her fate, confiding the child to his keeping, and urging him to seek a new home.

'Lacrimās dīlēctae pelle Creūsae.
Nōn ego Myrmidonum sēdēs Dolopumve superbās
aspiciam aut Grāīs servītum mātribus ībō,
Dardanis et dīvae Veneris nurus,
sed mē māgna deūm genetrīx hīs dētinet ōrīs.
Iamque valē et nātī servā commūnis amōrem.'
Haec ubi dicta dedit, lacrimantem et multa volentem
dīcere dēseruit tenuēsque recessit in aurās.
Ter cōnātus ibī collō dare bracchia circum;
ter frūstrā comprēnsa manūs effūgit imāgō
par levibus ventīs volucrīque simillima somnō.
Sīc dēmum sociōs cōnsūmptā nocte revīsō.
Atque hīc ingentem comitum adfluxisse novōrum
inveniō admīrāns numerum, mātrēsque virōsque,
collēctam exsiliō pūbem, miserābile vulgus.
Undique convēnēre animīs opibusque parātī,
in quāscumque velim pelagō dēdūcere terrās.
Iamque iugīs summae surgēbat Lūcifer Īdae
dūcēbatque diem, Danaīque obsessa tenēbant
līmina portārum, nec spēs opis ūlla dabātur;
cessī et sublātō montēs genitōre petīvī.

"This having said, she left me all in tears,
And minding much to speak; but she was gone,
And subtly fled into the weightless air.
Thrice rought I with mine arms to accoll her neck;
Thrice did my hands' vain hold the image escape,
Like nimble winds, and like the flying dream.
So, night spent out, return I to my feres:
And there, wondering, I find together swarmed
A new number of mates, mothers, and men;
A rout exiled, a wretched multitude,
From each-where flock together, prest to pass
With heart and goods to whatsoever land
By sliding seas me listed them to lead.
And now rose Lucifer above the ridge
Of lusty Ide, and brought the dawning light.
The Greeks held the entries of the gates beset,
Of help there was no hope. Then gave I place,
Took up my sire, and hasted to the hill." — SURREY.

Notice here the veil of tender sadness thrown over the scenes of that terrible night. "A tale of woe" indeed it is; but the light burns low, and the lurid glare of the burning city is softened into the dawning light of that desolate morning on which, with hope faintly struggling into their breasts, the exiles are to face the world in quest of a new and distant home. And the central figure of it all is Aeneas, with the wound of Creusa's loss still aching. What a hush would fall upon the listening throng in Dido's banquet-hall as Aeneas thus sadly draws to a close this terrible chapter of his life!

P. VERGILI MARONIS

AENEIDOS

LIBER II

Aeneas begins his story

Conticuēre omnēs intentīque ōra tenēbant.
Inde torō pater Aenēās sīc ōrsus ab altō:
Īnfandum, rēgīna, jubēs renovāre dolōrem,
Trōjānās ut opēs et lāmentābile rēgnum
ēruerint Danaī, quaeque ipse miserrima vīdī
et quōrum pars māgna fuī. Quis tālia fandō
Myrmidonum Dolopumve aut dūrī mīles Ulixī
temperet ā lacrimīs? et jam nox ūmida caelō
praecipitat, suādentque cadentia sīdera somnōs.
Sed sī tantus amor cāsūs cognōscere nostrōs
et breviter Trōjae suprēmum audīre labōrem,
quamquam animus meminisse horret lūctūque refūgit,
incipiam.

The Wooden Horse

Frāctī bellō Fātīsque repulsī
ductōrēs Danaum tot jam lābentibus annīs
īnstar montis equum dīvīnā Palladis arte
aedificant sectāque intexunt abiete costās;
vōtum prō reditū simulant; ea fāma vagātur.
Hūc dēlēcta virūm sortītī corpora fūrtim
inclūdunt caecō laterī penitusque cavernās
ingentēs uterumque armātō mīlite complent.

The Greeks withdraw; the Trojans rejoice

Est in cōnspectū Tenedos, nōtissima fāmā
īnsula, dīves opum, Priamī dum rēgna manēbant,
nunc tantum sinus et statiō male fīda carīnīs;
hūc sē prōvectī dēsertō in lītore condunt.
Nōs abiisse ratī et ventō petiisse Mycēnās.
Ergō omnis longō solvit sē Teucria lūctū:
panduntur portae; juvat īre et Dōrica castra
dēsertōsque vidēre locōs lītusque relictum.
Hīc Dolopum manus, hīc saevus tendēbat Achillēs;
classibus hīc locus; hīc aciē certāre solēbant.
Pars stupet innūptae dōnum exitiāle Minervae
et mōlem mīrantur equī; prīmusque Thymoetēs
dūcī intrā mūrōs hortātur et arce locārī,
sīve dolō seu jam Trōjae sīc fāta ferēbant.
At Capys et quōrum melior sententia mentī
aut pelagō Danaūm īnsidiās suspectaque dōna
praecipitāre jubent subjectīsque ūrere flammīs
aut terebrāre cavās uterī et temptāre latebrās.
Scinditur incertum studia in contrāria vulgus.

Laocoön's warning

Prīmus ibi ante omnēs māgnā comitante catervā
Lāocoōn ārdēns summā dēcurrit ab arce
et procul: 'Ō miserī, quae tanta īnsānia, cīvēs?
Crēditis āvectōs hostēs aut ūlla putātis
dōna carēre dolīs Danaūm? sīc nōtus Ulixēs?
Aut hōc inclūsī līgnō occultantur Achīvī,
aut haec in nostrōs fabricāta est māchina mūrōs
īnspectūra domōs ventūraque dēsuper urbī,
aut aliquis latet error; equō nē crēdite, Teucrī.

Quidquid id est, timeō Danaōs et dōna ferentēs.'
Sīc fātus validīs ingentem vīribus hastam
in latus inque ferī curvam compāgibus alvum
contorsit. Stetit illa tremēns, uterōque recussō
īnsonuēre cavae gemitumque dedēre cavernae.
Et sī fāta deūm, sī mēns nōn laeva fuisset,
impulerat ferrō Argolicās foedāre latebrās,
Trōjaque nunc stāret, Priamīque arx alta manērēs.

Sinon

Ecce manūs juvenem intereā post terga revinctum
pāstōrēs māgnō ad rēgem clāmōre trahēbant
Dardanidae, quī sē ignōtum venientibus ūltrō,
hōc ipsum ut strueret Trōjamque aperīret Achīvīs,
obtulerat, fīdēns animī atque in utrumque parātus,
seu versāre dolōs seu certae occumbere mortī.
Undique vīsendī studiō Trōjāna juventūs
circumfūsa ruit, certantque inlūdere captō.
Accipe nunc Danaūm īnsidiās et crīmine ab ūnō
disce omnēs.
Namque ut cōnspectū in mediō turbātus inermis
cōnstitit atque oculīs Phrygia agmina circumspexit,
'Heu, quae nunc tellūs,' inquit, 'quae me aequora possunt
accipere? aut quid jam miserō mihi dēnique restat,
cui neque apud Danaōs ūsquam locus, et super ipsī
Dardanidae īnfēnsī poenās cum sanguine poscunt?'
quō gemitū conversī animī compressus et omnis
impetus. Hortāmur fārī, quō sanguine crētus
quidve ferat; memoret, quae sit fīdūcia captō.
Ille haec dēpositā tandem formīdine fātur:

Sinon's false story

'Cūncta equidem tibi, rēx, fuerit quodcumque, fatēbor
vēra,' inquit, 'neque mē Argolicā dē gente negābō;
hōc prīmum; nec, sī miserum Fortūna Sinōnem
fīnxit, vānum etiam mendācemque improba finget.
Fandō aliquod sī forte tuās pervēnit ad aurēs
Bēlīdae nōmen Palamēdis et incluta fāmā
glōria, quem falsā sub prōditiōne Pelasgī
īnsontem īnfandō indiciō, quia bella vetābat,
dēmīsēre necī, nunc cassum lūmine lūgent,
illī mē comitem et cōnsanguinitāte propinquum
pauper in arma pater prīmīs hūc mīsit ab annīs.
Dum stābat rēgnō incolumis rēgumque vigēbat
conciliīs, et nōs aliquod nōmenque decusque
gessimus; invidiā postquam pellācis Ulixī
(haud ignōta loquor) superīs concessit ab ōrīs,
adflīctus vītam in tenebrīs lūctūque trahēbam
et cāsum īnsontis mēcum indīgnābar amīcī.
Nec tacuī dēmēns et mē, fors sī qua tulisset,
sī patriōs umquam remeāssem victor ad Argōs,
prōmīsī ultōrem et verbīs odia aspera mōvī.
Hinc mihi prīma malī lābēs, hinc semper Ulixēs
crīminibus terrēre novīs, hinc spargere vōcēs
in vulgum ambiguās et quaerere cōnscius arma.
Nec requiēvit enim, dōnec, Calchante ministrō, —
sed quid ego haec autem nēquīquam ingrāta revolvō.
quidve moror, sī omnēs ūnō ōrdine habētis Achīvōs
idque audīre sat est? iam dūdum sūmite poenās;
hōc Ithacus velit et māgnō mercentur Atrīdae.'

Tum vērō ārdēmus scītārī et quaerere causās,
ignārī scelerum tantōrum artisque Pelasgae.

Prōsequitur pavitāns et fīctō pectore fātur:
'Saepe fugam Danaī Trōjā cupiēre relīctā
mōlīrī et longō fessī discēdere bellō
(fēcissentque utinam!), saepe illōs aspera pontī
interclūsit hiems et terruit Auster euntēs;
praecipuē, cum jam hīc trabibus contextus acernīs
stāret equus, tōtō sonuērunt aethere nimbī.
Suspēnsī Eurypylum scītantem ōrācula Phoebī
mittimus, isque adytīs haec trīstia dicta reportat:
"Sanguine plācāstis ventōs et virgine caesā,
cum prīmum Īliacās, Danaī, vēnistis ad ōrās;
sanguine quaerendī reditūs, animāque litandum
Argolicā." Vulgī quae vōx ut vēnit ad aurēs,
obstipuēre animī, gelidusque per īma cucurrit
ossa tremor, cui fāta parent, quem poscat Apollō.
Hīc Ithacus vātem māgnō Calchanta tumultū
prōtrahit in mediōs; quae sint ea nūmina dīvūm
flāgitat. Et mihi jam multī crūdēle canēbant
artificis scelus et tacitī ventūra vidēbant.
Bis quīnōs silet ille diēs tēctusque recūsat
prōdere vōce suā quemquam aut oppōnere mortī.
Vix tandem māgnīs Ithacī clāmōribus āctus
compositō rumpit vōcem et mē dēstinat ārae.
Adsēnsēre omnēs et, quae sibi quisque timēbat,
ūnius in miserī exitium conversa tulēre.
Jamque diēs īnfanda aderat; mihi sacra parārī
et salsae frūgēs et circum tempora vittae.
Ēripuī, fateor, lētō mē et vincula rūpī
līmōsōque lacū per noctem obscūrus in ulvā
dēlituī, dum vēla darent, sī forte dedissent.
Nec mihi jam patriam antīquam spēs ūlla videndī
nec dulcēs nātōs exoptātumque parentem,

quōs illī fors et poenās ob nostra reposcent
effugia et culpam hanc miserōrum morte piābunt.
Quod tē per superōs et cōnscia nūmina vērī,
per sī qua est quae restat adhūc mortālibus ūsquam
intemerāta fidēs, ōrō, miserēre labōrum
tantōrum, miserēre animī nōn dīgna ferentis.'

Sinon gains sympathy and pretends to explain the Horse

His lacrimīs vītam damus et miserēscimus ūltrō.
Ipse virō prīmus manicās atque arta levārī
vincla jubet Priamus dictīsque ita fātur amīcīs:
'Quisquis es, āmissōs hinc jam oblīvīscere Grāiōs;
noster eris, mihique haec ēdissere vēra rogantī:
quō mōlem hanc immānis equī statuēre? quis auctor?
quidve petunt? quae rēligiō aut quae māchina bellī?'
dīxerat. Ille dolīs īnstrūctus et arte Pelasgā
sustulit exūtās vinclīs ad sīdera palmās:
'Vōs, aeternī ignēs, et nōn violābile vestrum
testor nūmen,' ait, 'vōs, ārae ēnsēsque nefandī,
quōs fūgī, vittaeque deūm, quās hostia gessī:
fās mihi Grāiōrum sacrāta resolvere jūra,
fās ōdisse virōs atque omnia ferre sub aurās,
sī qua tegunt, teneor patriae nec lēgibus ūllīs.
Tū modo prōmissīs maneās servātaque servēs
Trōja fidem, sī vēra feram, sī māgna rependam.
Omnis spēs Danaūm et coeptī fīdūcia bellī
Palladis auxiliīs semper stetit. Impius ex quō
Tȳdīdēs sed enim scelerumque inventor Ulixēs
fātāle adgressī sacrātō āvellere templō
Palladium, caesīs summae cūstōdibus arcis,
corripuēre sacram effigiem manibusque cruentīs
virgineās ausī dīvae contingere vittās,

ex illō fluere ac retrō sublāpsa referrī
spēs Danaûm, frāctae vīrēs, āversa deae mēns.
Nec dubiīs ea sīgna dedit Trītōnia mōnstrīs.
Vix positum castrīs simulācrum: ārsēre coruscae
lūminibus flammae arrēctīs, salsusque per artūs
sūdor iit, terque ipsa solō (mīrābile dictū)
ēmicuit parmamque ferēns hastamque trementem.
Extemplō temptanda fugā canit aequora Calchās
nec posse Argolicīs exscindī Pergama tēlīs,
ōmina nī repetant Argīs nūmenque redūcant,
quod pelagō et curvīs sēcum āvexēre carīnīs.
Et nunc quod patriās ventō petiēre Mycēnās,
arma deōsque parant comitēs pelagōque remēnsō
inprōvīsī aderunt; ita dīgerit ōmina Calchās.
Hanc prō Palladiō monitī, prō nūmine laesō
effigiem statuēre, nefās quae trīste piāret.
Hanc tamen inmēnsam Calchās attollere mōlem
rōboribus textīs caelōque ēdūcere jussit,
nē recipī portīs aut dūcī in moenia posset
neu populum antīquā sub rēligiōne tuērī,
nam sī vestra manus violāsset dōna Minervae,
tum māgnum exitium (quod dī prius ōmen in ipsum
convertant!) Priamī imperiō Phrygibusque futūrum;
sīn manibus vestrīs vestram ascendisset in urbem,
ūltrō Asiam māgnō Pelopēa ad moenia bellō
ventūram, et nostrōs ea fāta manēre nepōtēs.'
Tālibus īnsidiīs perjūrīque arte Sinōnis
crēdita rēs, captīque dolīs lacrimīsque coāctīs,
quōs neque Tȳdīdēs nec Lārissaeus Achillēs,
nōn annī domuēre decem, nōn mīlle carīnae.

Fate of Laocoön

Hīc aliud mājus miserīs multōque tremendum
obicitur magis atque inprōvida pectora turbat.
Lāocoōn ductus Neptūnō sorte sacerdōs
sollemnēs taurum ingentem mactābat ad ārās.
Ecce autem geminī ā Tenedō tranquilla per alta
(horrēscō referēns) inmēnsīs orbibus anguēs
incumbunt pelagō pariterque ad lītora tendunt,
pectora quōrum inter fluctūs arrēcta jubaeque
sanguineae superant undās, pars cētera pontum
pōne legit sinuatque inmēnsa volūmine terga.
Fit sonitus spūmante salō, jamque arva tenēbant
ārdentēsque oculōs suffectī sanguine et ignī
sībila lambēbant linguīs vibrantibus ōra.
Diffugimus vīsū exsanguēs. Illī agmine certō
Lāocoönta petunt, et prīmum parva duōrum
corpora nātōrum serpēns amplexus uterque
implicat et miserōs morsū dēpāscitur artūs;
post ipsum auxiliō subeuntem et tēla ferentem
corripiunt spīrīsque ligant ingentibus et jam
bis medium amplexī, bis collō squāmea circum
terga datī superant capite et cervīcibus altīs.
Ille simul manibus tendit dīvellere nōdōs
perfūsus saniē vittās ātrōque venēnō,
clāmōrēs simul horrendōs ad sīdera tollit,
quālis mūgītus, fūgit cum saucius āram
taurus et incertam excussit cervīce secūrim.
At geminī lāpsū dēlūbra ad summa dracōnēs
diffugiunt saevaeque petunt Trītōnidis arcem
sub pedibusque deae clipeīque sub orbe teguntur.

Persuaded by Sinon and frightened by Laocoön's death, the Trojans admit the Horse to their city

Tum vērō tremefacta novus per pectora cūnctīs
īnsinuat pavor, et scelus expendisse merentem
Lāocoönta ferunt, sacrum quī cuspide rōbur
laeserit et tergō scelerātam intorserit hastam.
Dūcendum ad sēdēs simulācrum ōrandaque dīvae
nūmina conclāmant.
Dīvidimus mūrōs et moenia pandimus urbis.
Accingunt omnēs operī pedibusque rotārum
subiciunt lāpsūs et stuppea vincula collō
intendunt. Scandit fātālis māchina mūrōs
fēta armīs. Puerī circum innūptaeque puellae
sacra canunt fūnemque manū contingere gaudent;
illa subit mediaeque mināns inlābitur urbī.
Ō patria, ō dīvūm domus Īlium et incluta bellō
moenia Dardanidūm! quater ipsō in līmine portae
substitit, atque uterō sonitum quater arma dedēre;
īnstāmus tamen inmemorēs caecīque furōre
et mōnstrum īnfēlīx sacrātā sistimus arce.
Tunc etiam fātīs aperit Cassandra futūrīs
ōra deī jussū nōn umquam crēdita Teucrīs;
nōs dēlūbra deūm miserī, quibus ūltimus esset
ille diēs, fēstā vēlāmus fronde per urbem.

Under cover of night the Greeks steal back and Sinon releases the heroes from the Horse

Vertitur intereā caelum, et ruit Ōceanō nox
involvēns umbrā māgnā terramque polumque
Myrmidonumque dolōs; fūsī per moenia Teucrī

conticuēre; sopor fessōs complectitur artūs.
Et jam Argīva phalanx īnstrūctīs nāvibus ībat
ā Tenedō tacitae per amīca silentia lūnae
lītora nōta petēns, flammās cum rēgia puppis
extulerat fātīsque deūm dēfēnsus inīquīs
inclūsōs uterō Danaōs et pīnea fūrtim
laxat claustra Sinōn. Illōs patefactus ad aurās
reddit equus, laetīque cavō sē rōbore prōmunt
Thessandrus Sthenelusque ducēs et dīrus Ulixēs
dēmissum lāpsī per fūnem Acamāsque Thoāsque
Pēlīdēsque Neoptolemus prīmusque Machāōn
et Menelāus et ipse dolī fabricātor Epēos.
Invādunt urbem somnō vīnōque sepultam;
caeduntur vigilēs, portīsque patentibus omnēs
accipiunt sociōs atque agmina cōnscia jungunt.

Hector appears to Aeneas in a dream

Tempus erat, quō prīma quiēs mortālibus aegrīs
incipit et dōnō dīvūm grātissima serpit.
In somnīs ecce ante oculōs maestissimus Hector
vīsus adesse mihī largōsque effundere flētūs,
raptātus bīgīs, ut quondam, āterque cruentō
pulvere perque pedēs trājectus lōra tumentēs,
— hei mihi, quālis erat, quantum mūtātus ab illō
Hectore, quī redit exuviās indūtus Achillī,
vel Danaūm Phrygiōs jaculātus puppibus īgnēs —,
squālentem barbam et concrētōs sanguine crīnēs
vulneraque illa gerēns, quae circum plūrima mūrōs
accēpit patriōs! ūltrō flēns ipse vidēbar
compellāre virum et maestās exprōmere vōcēs:
'Ō lūx Dardaniae, spēs ō fīdissima Teucrūm,
quae tantae tenuēre morae? quibus, Hector, ab ōrīs

exspectāte venīs? ut tē post multa tuōrum
fūnera, post variōs hominumque urbisque labōrēs
dēfessī aspicimus! quae causa indīgna serēnōs
foedāvit vultūs? aut cūr haec vulnera cernō?'
Ille nihil, nec mē quaerentem vāna morātur,
sed graviter gemitūs īmō dē pectore dūcēns
'Heu fuge, nāte deā, tēque hīs,' ait, 'ēripe flammīs:
hostis habet mūrōs; ruit altō ā culmine Trōja.
Sat patriae Priamōque datum; sī Pergama dextrā
dēfendī possent, etiam hāc dēfēnsa fuissent.
Sacra suōsque tibī commendat Trōja Penātēs:
hōs cape fātōrum comitēs, hīs moenia quaere,
māgna pererrātō statuēs quae dēnique pontō.'
Sīc ait et manibus vittās Vestamque potentem
aeternumque adytīs effert penetrālibus īgnem.

The city in flames

Dīversō intereā miscentur moenia lūctū,
et magis atque magis, quamquam sēcrēta parentis
Anchīsae domus arboribusque obtēcta recessit,
clārēscunt sonitūs, armōrumque ingruit horror.
Excutior somnō et summī fastīgia tēctī
ascēnsū superō atque arrēctīs auribus adstō,
in segetem velutī cum flamma furentibus Austrīs
incidit aut rapidus montānō flūmine torrēns
sternit agrōs, sternit sata laeta boumque labōrēs
praecipitēsque trahit silvās; stupet īnscius altō
accipiēns sonitum saxī dē vertice pāstor.
Tum vērō manifēsta fidēs Danaūmque patēscunt
īnsidiae. Jam Dēiphobī dedit ampla ruīnam
Vulcānō superante domus, jam proximus ārdet
Ūcalegōn, Sīgēa īgnī freta lāta relūcent.

Exoritur clāmorque virūm clangorque tubārum.
Arma āmēns capiō; nec sat ratiōnis in armīs,
sed glomerāre manum bellō et concurrere in arcem
cum sociīs ārdent animī; furor īraque mentem
praecipitant, pulchrumque morī succurrit in armīs.

Panthus tells of destruction

Ecce autem tēlīs Panthūs ēlāpsus Achīvūm,
Panthūs Ōthryadēs, arcis Phoebīque sacerdōs,
sacra manū victōsque deōs parvumque nepōtem
ipse trahit cursūque āmēns ad līmina tendit.
'Quō rēs summa locō, Panthū? quam prēndimus arcem?'
Vix ea fātus eram, gemitū cum tālia reddit:
'Vēnit summa diēs et inēluctābile tempus
Dardaniae. Fuimus Trōes, fuit Īlium et ingēns
glōria Teucrōrum; ferus omnia Juppiter Argōs
trānstulit; incēnsā Danaī dominantur in urbe.
Arduus armātōs mediīs in moenibus adstāns
fundit equus, victorque Sinōn incendia miscet
īnsultāns. ortīs aliī bipatentibus adsunt,
mīlia quot māgnīs umquam vēnēre Mycēnīs;
obsēdēre illī tēlīs angusta viārum
oppositīs; stat ferrī aciēs mūcrōne coruscō
stricta, parāta necī; vix prīmī proelia temptant
portārum vigilēs et caecō Marte resistunt.'

Aeneas leads a band of Trojans to the rescue

Tālibus Ōthryadae dictīs et nūmine dīvūm
in flammās et in arma feror, quō trīstis Erīnys,
quō fremitus vocat et sublātus ad aethera clāmor.
Addunt sē sociōs Rhīpeus et māximus armīs
Ēpytus oblātī per lūnam Hypanisque Dymāsque

et laterī adglomerant nostrō juvenisque Coroebus
Mygdonidēs; illīs ad Trōjam forte diēbus
vēnerat īnsānō Cassandrae incēnsus amōre
et gener auxilium Priamō Phrygibusque ferēbat,
īnfēlīx, quī nōn spōnsae praecepta furentis
audierit.
Quōs ubi cōnfertōs audēre in proelia vīdī,
incipiō super hīs: 'Juvenēs, fortissima frūstrā
pectora, sī vōbīs audentem extrēma cupīdō
certa sequī (quae sit rēbus fortūna, vidētīs;
excessēre omnēs adytīs ārīsque relictīs
dī, quibus imperium hōc steterat; succurritis urbī
incēnsae) — moriāmur et in media arma ruāmus.
Ūna salūs victīs nūllam spērāre salūtem.'
Sīc animīs juvenum furor additus. *Inde lupī ceu*
raptōrēs ātrā in nebulā, quōs improba ventris
exēgit caecōs rabiēs catulīque relictī
faucibus exspectant siccīs, per tēla, per hostēs
vādimus haud dubiam in mortem mediaeque tenēmus
urbis iter; nox ātra cavā circumvolat umbrā.
Quis clādem illīus noctis, quis fūnera fandō
explicet aut possit lacrimīs aequāre labōrēs?
Urbs antīqua ruit multōs domināta per annōs;
plūrima perque viās sternuntur inertia passim
corpora perque domōs et rēligiōsa deōrum
līmina; nec sōlī poenās dant sanguine Teucrī;
quondam etiam victīs redit in praecordia virtūs,
victōrēsque cadunt Danaī; crūdēlis ubīque
lūctus, ubīque pavor et plūrima mortis imāgō.

Androgeos slain; Aeneas' band disguise themselves

Prīmus sē Danaūm māgnā comitante catervā
Androgeōs offert nōbīs socia agmina crēdēns
īnscius atque ūltrō verbīs compellat amīcīs:
'Festīnāte, virī. Nam quae tam sēra morātur
sēgnitiēs? aliī rapiunt incēnsa feruntque
Pergama; vōs celsīs nunc prīmum ā nāvibus ītis?'
Dīxit et extemplō (neque enim respōnsa dabantur
fīda satis) sēnsit mediōs dēlāpsus in hostēs.
Obstipuit retrōque pedem cum vōce repressit,
imprōvīsum asprīs velutī quī sentibus anguem
pressit humī nītēns trepidusque repente refūgit
attollentem īrās et caerula colla tumentem;
haud secus Androgeōs vīsū tremefactus abībat.
Inruimus dēnsīs et circumfundimur armīs
ignārōsque locī passim et formīdine captōs
sternimus; adspīrat prīmō fortūna labōrī.
Atque hīc successū exsultāns animīsque Coroebus
'Ō sociī, quā prīma,' inquit, 'fortūna salūtis
mōnstrat iter quāque ostendit sē dextra, sequāmur;
mūtēmus clipeōs Danaūmque īnsīgnia nōbīs
aptēmus. Dolus an virtūs, quis in hoste requīrat?
arma dabunt ipsī.' Sīc fātus deinde comantem
Androgeī galeam clipeīque īnsīgne decōrum
induitur laterīque Argīvum accommodat ēnsem.
Hōc Rhīpeus, hōc ipse Dymās omnisque juventūs
laeta facit; spoliīs sē quisque recentibus armat.
Vādimus inmixtī Danaīs haud nūmine nostrō
multaque per caecam congressī proelia noctem
cōnserimus, multōs Danaūm dēmittimus Orcō;
diffugiunt aliī ad nāvēs et lītora cursū

fīda petunt, pars ingentem formīdine turpī
scandunt rūrsus equum et nōtā conduntur in alvō.

Death of Coroebus

Heu nihil invītīs fās quemquam fīdere dīvīs!
Ecce trahēbātur passīs Priamēïa virgō
crīnibus ā templō Cassandra adytīsque Minervae
ad caelum tendēns ārdentia lūmina frūstrā,
lūmina, nam tenerās arcēbant vincula palmās.
Nōn tulit hanc speciem furiātā mente Coroebus
et sēsē medium injēcit peritūrus in agmen;
cōnsequimur cūnctī et dēnsīs incurrimus armīs.
Hīc prīmum ex altō dēlūbrī culmine tēlīs
nostrōrum obruimur, oriturque miserrima caedēs
armōrum faciē et Grāiārum errōre jubārum;
tum Danaī gemitū atque ēreptae virginis īrā
undique collēctī invādunt, ācerrimus Ājāx
et geminī Atrīdae Dolopumque exercitus omnis,
adversī ruptō ceu quondam turbine ventī
cōnflīgunt, Zephyrusque Notusque et laetus Eōīs
Eurus equīs; strīdunt silvae, saevitque tridentī
spūmeus atque īmō Nēreus ciet aequora fundō.
Illī etiam, sī quōs obscūrā nocte per umbram
fūdimus īnsidiīs tōtāque agitāvimus urbe,
appārent; prīmī clipeōs mentītaque tēla
agnōscunt atque ōra sonō discordia sīgnant.
Īlicet obruimur numerō, prīmusque Coroebus
Pēneleī dextrā dīvae armipotentis ad āram
prōcumbit; cadit et Rhīpeus, jūstissimus ūnus
quī fuit in Teucrīs et servantissimus aequī
(dīs aliter vīsum); pereunt Hypanisque Dymāsque
cōnfīxī ā sociīs, nec tē tua plūrima, Panthū,

lābentem pietās nec Apollinis īnfula tēxit.
Īliacī cinerēs et flamma extrēma meōrum,
testor in occāsū vestrō nec tēla nec ūllās
vītāvisse vicēs Danaūm et sī Fāta fuissent
ut caderem meruisse manū.

Attack upon Priam's palace

Dīvellimur inde,
Īphitus et Peliās mēcum, quōrum Īphitus aevō
jam gravior, Peliās et vulnere tardus Ulixī;
prōtinus ad sēdēs Priamī clāmōre vocātī.
Hīc vērō ingentem pugnam, ceu cētera nūsquam
bella forent, nūllī tōtā morerentur in urbe,
sīc Martem indomitum Danaōsque ad tēcta ruentēs
cernimus obsessumque āctā testūdine līmen.
Haerent parietibus scālae, postēsque sub ipsōs
nītuntur gradibus clipeōsque ad tēla sinistrīs
prōtēctī obiciunt, prēnsant fastīgia dextrīs.
Dardanidae contrā turrēs ac tōta domōrum
culmina convellunt (hīs sē, quandō ūltima cernunt,
extrēmā jam in morte parant dēfendere tēlīs)
aurātāsque trabēs, veterum decora illa parentum,
dēvolvunt; aliī strictīs mūcrōnibus īmās
obsēdēre forēs; hās servant agmine dēnsō.
Īnstaurātī animī rēgis succurrere tēctīs
auxiliōque levāre virōs vimque addere victīs.

Aeneas ascends to the roof of the palace

Līmen erat caecaeque forēs et pervius ūsus
tēctōrum inter sē Priamī postēsque relīctī
ā tergō, īnfēlīx quā sē, dum rēgna manēbant,
saepius Andromachē ferre incomitāta solēbat

ad socerōs et avō puerum Astyanacta trahēbat.
Ēvādō ad summī fastīgia culminis, unde
tēla manū miserī jactābant inrita Teucrī.
Turrim in praecipitī stantem summīsque sub astra
ēductam tēctīs, unde omnis Trōja vidērī
et Danaūm solitae nāvēs et Achāica castra,
adgressī ferrō circum, quā summa labantēs
jūnctūrās tabulāta dabant, convellimus altīs
sēdibus impulimusque; ea lāpsa repente ruīnam
cum sonitū trahit et Danaūm super agmina lātē
incidit. Ast aliī subeunt, nec saxa nec ūllum
tēlōrum intereā cessat genus.

Pyrrhus attacks the front door

Vēstibulum ante ipsum prīmōque in līmine Pyrrhus
exsultat tēlīs et lūce coruscus aēnā,
quālis ubi in lūcem coluber mala grāmina pāstus,
frīgida sub terrā tumidum quem brūma tegēbat,
nunc positīs novus exuviīs nitidusque juventā
lūbrica convolvit sublātō pectore terga
arduus ad sōlem et linguīs micat ōre trisulcīs.
Ūnā ingēns Periphās et equōrum agitātor Achillis,
armiger Automedōn, ūnā omnis Scȳria pūbēs
succēdunt tēctō et flammās ad culmina jactant.
Ipse inter prīmōs correptā dūra bipennī
līmina perrumpit postēsque ā cardine vellit
aerātōs; jamque excīsā trabe fīrma cavāvit
rōbora et ingentem lātō dedit ōre fenestram.
Appāret domus intus et ātria longa patēscunt,
appārent Priamī et veterum penetrālia rēgum,
armātōsque vident stantēs in līmine prīmō.

The palace entered; Priam slain

At domus interior gemitū miserōque tumultū
miscētur, penitusque cavae plangōribus aedēs
fēmineīs ululant; ferit aurea sīdera clāmor.
Tum pavidae tēctīs mātrēs ingentibus errant
amplexaeque tenent postēs atque ōscula fīgunt.
Īnstat vī patriā Pyrrhus; nec claustra nec ipsī
cūstōdēs sufferre valent; labat āriete crēbrō
jānua, et ēmōtī prōcumbunt cardine postēs.
Fit via vī; rumpunt aditūs prīmōsque trucīdant
inmissī Danaī et lātē loca mīlite complent:
nōn sīc, aggeribus ruptīs cum spūmeus amnis
exiit oppositāsque ēvīcit gurgite mōlēs,
fertur in arva furēns cumulō campōsque per omnēs
cum stabulīs armenta trahit. Vīdī ipse furentem
caede Neoptolemum geminōsque in līmine Atrīdās,
vīdī Hecubam centumque nurūs Priamumque per ārās
sanguine foedantem, quōs ipse sacrāverat, ignēs.
Quīnquāgintā illī thalamī, spēs tanta nepōtum,
barbaricō postēs aurō spoliīsque superbī,
prōcubuēre; tenent Danaī, quā dēficit ignis.

AENEID, II

NOTES

1-13

Aeneas begins his story.

1. **Conticuēre . . . tenēbant**: note the tenses; the perf. of the sudden hush; the imperf. of the continued situation: "All were hushed and, attentive, held their gaze." *intenti* really means "strained." What does *intenti* modify?

For *conticuēre*, see *conticēscō*.

2. **torō ab altō** = *ab alto toro.* —— **ōrsus**, see *ōrdior*.

3. **Infandum**: mod. *dolorem*; "unutterable"; supply *me* as subj. of *renovare*.

4. **ut**: "how." —— **opēs**, "power" (lit. "resources").

5. **ēruerint**, perf. subjunct., depend. question. —— **quaeque ipse miserrima vīdī**, "and the very sad sights I myself have seen."

6. **fandō**: abl. of gerund from (*for*), *fārī*, *fātus*; "in telling"; abl. of the circumstance or situation, substituted for the pres. part.; note the *caesura* in the fourth foot.



MINERVA

7. **Myrmidonum**: partitive gen. mod. *quis*; *quis* should be repeated as an adj. before *mīles.* —— **Ulixī**: peculiar gen. of *Ulixēs*, *Ulysses*.

8. **temperet**: potential subjunct. "who would refrain?" —— **et jam** adds another reason for refusing, "and now too." ——

ūmida, "moist, dewy." —— **caelō** = *de caelo*, abl. of source or separation.

9. praecipitat, "drops" as a curtai ; notice the dreamy, *nodding* rhythm of this line, intensified by the alliteration; "and the setting stars invite slumbers."

10. sī tantus amor: sc. *est tibi*; "but if thou hast so great a desire to learn our misfortunes and briefly to hear the last struggle of Troy." Notice how naturally a simple Engl. translation lends itself to musical rhythm.

12. meminisse, "at the remembrance," lit. "to remember"; this use of the inf. as a sort of adverbial modifier of *horret* is characteristic of poetry. —— **lūctū refūgit**: note the perf.; "has recoiled in grief"; *luctu*, abl. of manner or cause.

13–24

The Greeks build the wooden horse and pretend to have returned home.

13. Frāctī: see *frango*. —— **Fātīs**: the three sisters, Clotho, Lachesis, and Atropos, who were represented as spinning the lives of men as threads.

14. Danaūm = *Danaōrum*, a poetic form: the Greeks at this early time had no common national name. —— **tot jam lābentibus annīs**: abl. abs.; "so many years now slipping by," "as so many years were," etc.

15. instar: see vocab.; in apposition to *equum*; "as large as a mountain." —— **Palladis arte**, "art of Minerva," *i.e.* weaving; the next line explains; not literal weaving, but crossing the *planks* on the *ribs*.

16. abiete: pronounced in three syllables as = *abjete*; what gender?

17. votum (*equum esse*).

18. Hūc dēlecta. . . . "Hither they stealthily (bring and) shut up in the dark side, men of choice physique, having cast lot, and utterly fill the huge caverns of the womb with armed soldiery." —— **virūm** = *virorum*. —— **dēlecta virūm corpora**: lit. "picked bodies (not bands) of men"; "bodies" in the literal sense of "physical frames"; notice the poetical collective sing. *mīlite* = *mīlitibus*.

19. cavernas uterumque, "caverns *and* the womb" for "caverns *of* the womb," as if they were two separate notions; this figure is called *hendiadys* (Grk. ἕν, *one*; διά, *through*; δύο, *two*), "one idea expressed as two"; it is a common figure in Vergil.

21. in conspectu, "in sight (of Troy)." —— **fāmā**: note the cases here; "island well known by fame."

22. dives opum, "rich in resources"; what adjectives are modified by an objective gen.? see Grammar.

23. tantum: adv.; "only, merely." —— **sinus**: in apposition to *insula*. —— **male fida**: *male = non*; "faithless, treacherous." —— **carinis**: dat. of interest.

24. sē: obj. of *condunt*. —— **provecti**: see *provehō*.

25–39

The Trojans rejoice and visit the scene of the deserted camp. They debate as to the meaning and proper disposal of the horse.

25. abiisse: sc. *eos* as subj. —— **ratī**: perf. part. of *reor*; sc. *sumus*. —— **ventō**: abl. of means. —— **Mycēnās**: Mycenae, one of the two cities (the other was Argos) ruled over by Agamemnon. Why refer here to the home of Agamemnon?

27. juvat: impersonal; "it delights."

28. locos: this masculine plur. is rare; the prose form would be *loca*.

29. hīc: adv., "here"; sc. *erat* or possibly *tendēbat* from the next clause. —— **manus**, "band." —— **tendēbat**, "used to stretch (his tents)"; note the impressive repetition of *hīc*.

30. classibus: dat. of interest and possession; "place for the fleets"; why plur.? Was it one national fleet or a collection of independent contingents? —— **aciē**: abl. of manner, or = *in acie*, of place.

31. innuptae, "unwedded," "virgin" (Ἀθήνη Παρθένος, hence the temple called Parthenon in Athens, which city was sacred to Athéné or Minerva). —— **Minervae**: objective gen.; "gift to."

33. dūcī hortātur: what would be the prose construction? supply *equum* as subj. —— **arce** = *in arce*.

34. dolō: abl. of manner; Thymoetes had a grudge against

King Priam, who had put his wife and son to death. —— **jam,** "now at last." —— **ferēbant,** "were tending" or "setting" as a wind.

35. At Capys . . ., "But Capys and those whose minds had better purpose." —— **quorum,** poss. gen. mod. *mentī*. —— **mentī**: dat. of possession; sc. *erat*.

36. pelagō: dat. used poetically for *in pelagus*. —— **Danaūm** = *Danaōrum*. —— **īnsidiās, dōna**: plur.; may be rendered "all such snares and gifts."

37. subjectīsque: the *-que* joins two modes of destroying; the *aut . . . aut* distinguish the *destroying* in either of the ways mentioned from the *exploring*; trans. "either, on the one hand, to plunge into the sea or (lit. 'and') burn by placing flames beneath . . . or (on the other) to bore and test the hollow lurking-places of the womb."

39. incertum: to be taken predicatively; "in uncertainty." —— **in,** "between"; the gender of *vulgus*?

40–56

Laocoön warns the Trojans and hurls his spear at the beast in defiance.

40. catervā: abl. abs.

41. ārdēns: "in hot haste."

42. procul: sc. *exclamat*.

44. carēre dolīs, "are void of guile"; *careō* is mod. by an abl. of separation.

45. hōc lignō: either "by this wood," instrumental abl., or "in this wood" = *in hōc lignō*, local abl.

46. in nostrōs mūrōs, "against our walls."

47. īnspectūra: denotes the intention "to look into." —— **urbī** = *in urbem*, poetical dat. of the goal.

48. error, "deception," "fraud" (lit. "mistake"). —— **equō**: dat. —— **nē credite**: what would the classical prose construction be? See Grammar on negative commands.

49. et. "even." —— **timeō Danaōs,** etc.: one of the best known quotations from Vergil.

50. validīs vīribus, "with might and main."

51. curvam compāgibus: take after *alvum*; "at the belly of

the beast rounded with joints"; or, more freely, "at the ribbed arch of the belly."

52. contorsit: see *contorqueō*. —— **illa**: *i.e. hasta*.

53. insonuēre cavae: *cavae* is predic.; "rang hollow."

54. sī fāta: supply *nōn laeva* (n. plur.) *fuissent*; "if the fates of the gods (*deūm* = *deōrum*) had not been *adverse*, if our minds had not been *perverted*"; *laevus* = left-handed, wrong, dis-torted, ill-omened; this use of *laeva* in two senses is a species of *zeugma*. —— **fuisset**: contrary to fact in the past.

55. impulerat: poetic for *impulisset*; "he certainly had (= would have) impelled us." —— **foedāre**: in prose this would be *ut foedā-remus*; the inf. is a complement.

56. stāret . . . manērēs: the Ms. reading; "Troy would now be standing and thou, high citadel," etc.; the imperf. subjunc. denotes what is contrary to fact in the present. See Grammar on conditional sentences. Other texts read *stāret . . . manēret* or *stārēs . . . manērēs*; but the sudden change of person is more dramatic. Why, therefore, doubt the Ms.?

57–75

Trojan shepherds bring in a Greek, who arouses pity and tells his tale.

57. Ecce manūs . . ., "Lo Trojan shepherds were meanwhile dragging to the king, with great clamor, a youth with hands bound behind his back, who voluntarily had presented himself, unknown, to them as they came." —— **manūs**: acc. of specification. —— **terga**: poetic plur.

59. Dardanidae: nom. plur. of *Dardanidēs, ae, ae, ēn* (or *am*), *a, ā*; a Greek first decl. noun; such a noun is called a *patronymic*, *i.e.* a name based on the father's name; "sons of Dardanus" = "Trojans." —— **venientibus**: dat. ind. obj. of *obtulerat*.

61. animī: obj. gen. mod. *fīdēns* "confident in mind." —— **in utrumque**, "in either direction," "for either purpose."

62. versare: these infs. are in apposition to **utrumque**.

63. studiō: abl. of manner or cause. —— **visendī**: obj. gen.; "on all sides thronging rushed the Trojan youth in eager haste to see."

64. circumfūsa: see *circumfundō*. —— **captō**: dat. ind. obj.

—— **inlūdere**: another poetical inf. complement (see *foedāre* 55) = *in inludendō*.

65. accipe, "hear." —— **crīmine**, "charge," "accusation."

66. omnēs, "learn of them all" (the Greeks). This line, being unfinished, is called a *hemistich*. See also vv. 233, 346, 468. These lines are a reminder of the fact that Vergil died before he could perfect the poem. See Introduction, on the death of Vergil.

67. ut, "when" = *ubi*: note the indic. —— **turbatus**: does this accord with *fīdēns animī*? How?

68. Phrygia = *Trōjāna*; Troy was in Phrygia. This is a spondaic verse. Scan it.

69. aequŏra: poetic word for "seas"; note the gender and *ŏ*; give other exceptions in *-or*.

71. locus (*est*). —— **super**: adv.; "besides."

73. quō gemitū: abl. of means. —— **conversī**: sc. *sunt*. —— **compressus**: sc. *est*. —— **et**, "also."

74. fārī: see note on *dūcī*, 33. —— **quo sanguine crētus**: sc. *sit*; why subjunc.?

75. memoret: jussive subjunc. —— **quae . . . captō**, "what confidence as a captive he is entitled to" (lit. "what confidence there is for him a captive," dat. of possession).

76. haec: n. plur., obj. of *fātur*.

76–104

"I am a Greek. A relative of Palamedes, who was condemned to death for opposing the continuation of the war, I shared in the hatred Ulysses entertained for that prince. At last, by the aid of Calchas, the priest and prophet -- but why weary you? Put an end to me and please Ulysses."

77. cūncta . . ., "All things truly (lit. 'true') to thee, O king, will I confess, whatever betides." —— **fuerit**: fut. perf.; "whatever turns out to have happened."

78. vēra: n. plur. adj. —— **mē**: sc. *esse*.

79. hōc prīmum: sc. *dicam*. —— **nec sī** . . ., "nor if Fortune has made Sinon wretched, will she also, with all her malice, make him a cheat and a liar."

80. improba: an adj., emphatic by position. —— **finxit, finget**:

fingo used of moulding clay; cf. Eng. *fiction*, *fictitious*, *finger*. —— **miserum, vanum, mendacem**: obj. predicates.

81. Fandō . . ., "If perchance in conversation any mention of Palamēdēs, son of Bēlus, has reached your ears, and his fame renowned in story." —— **Bēlīdēs**: patronymic; how declined?

83. quem falsā . . ., "whom, though innocent, the Greeks, under false charge of treason, sent down to death on accursed testimony, because he was denouncing the war, but (whom) now they mourn when bereft of light."

85. lumine: abl. of separation.

86. illī me . . ., "me as a companion to him and one near related by blood, my father, being poor, sent hither to the war (*in arma*) from my earliest years." —— **illī**: dat. of interest or possession.

88. rēgnō, "in his sovereignty"; abl. of specification.

89. conciliīs = *in conciliīs*. —— **et nōs**, "we also." —— **nomenque decusque**: the first *-que* = "both"; ignore it.

90. invidiā: abl. of means or cause; "after, through the hatred of Ulysses (I speak things not unknown), he retired from these upper shores;" a *euphemism* for death.

93. mēcum, "to myself."

94. dēmēns: in apposition; "nor, fool that I was, did I keep silent." —— **me . . . ultōrem prōmisī**, "vowed myself his avenger"; *ultorem* is an obj. pred. —— **quā** = *quae*, indef. form in fem. sing. and neut. pl. of *quis*. —— **tulisset, remeāsset**: pluperf. subj. here in indirect discourse, historical seq., represents the fut. perf. indic. of direct discourse. —— **tulisset**, "brought it to pass."

97. prima malī lābēs, "my first slip down the path of evil." —— **malī**: adj. used as noun, poss. gen. mod. *lābēs*.

98. vōcēs, "sayings."

99. conscius, "conscious of guilt." —— **terrēre, spargere, quaerere**: *historical infinitives*, = *terrēbat*, etc.; notice that the subject, *Ulixēs*, is in the nom. case. —— **vulgum**: here masc.; usually neut.

100. Calchante ministro, "with the aid of Calchas" (lit. "Calchas being his helper"). Calchas was the soothsayer of the Greeks at Troy. The sudden interruption of the sentence (aposiopēsis) is for dramatic effect, *i.e.* to increase their curiosity and arouse their sympathy.

101. revolvo, "repeat" or "unfold" (lit. "unroll," probably

of a scroll unrolled as it is read). —— **quid**, "why"; adverbial accusative.

102. **ūnō ōrdine** = *in ūnō ōrdine.* —— **habēbis**, "hold," "deem," "consider."

103. **id audīre**, "to hear that," that one is a Greek. —— **jamdūdum**, "long since"; a peculiar modifier of the imperative; trans. "inflict (lit. 'exact') the penalty long since due."

104. **Ithacus**, "the Ithacan"; contemptuous for Ulysses. —— **velit**, "would wish"; potential subjunct.; similarly **mercentur. māgnō** (*pretiō*), "at a great price," abl. of means. —— **Atrīdae**, "sons of Atreus," Menelaus and Agamemnon.

105–144

Encouraged to proceed, Sinon slyly unfolds the plot of Ulysses and Calchas to slay him. An oracle demands blood for the slaying of Agamemnon's daughter as a sacrifice. Sinon is doomed, but escapes. He appeals for protection and pity.

105. **causās**, "the reasons" for this treatment; others read **cāsūs**, "vicissitudes," "misfortunes."

106. **artis**, "cunning."

107. **fictō pectore**, "with feigned emotion" or "with false heart." —— **fātur**: see *for, fārī.*

108. **fugam**: obj. of *mōlīrī*. —— **cupiēre** = *cupiērunt.*

109. **longō bellō**: abl. of cause, mod. *fessī.*

110. **fēcissent**, "that they had done so"; a wish contrary to fact in the past. —— **aspera pontī hiems**, "rough storm of the sea."

111. **euntēs**, "as they were departing," mod. *illōs.*

112. **jam**, "now," "at last." —— **hic equus trabibus acernīs contextus**, "this horse framed of maple beams." —— **trabibus**: abl. of means.

113. **tōtō aethere**, "throughout all the sky"; abl. of location.

114. **suspēnsī**: mod. subject of *mittimus.* —— **scitantem**, "inquiring"; some read supine **scitatum**. —— **Phoebus** = Apollo.

115. **adytīs**, "from the shrine," the Greek "holy of holies." —— **dicta**, "words," "utterances."

116. **plācāstis** = *plācāvistis.* —— **sanguine et virgine caesa**, "by blood and a virgin slain" or "by the blood of a slain virgin." This

is an example of *hendiadys*; see note on v. 18. The maiden was Iphigenīa, daughter of Agamemnon, sacrificed at Aulis on the east of Greece before the fleet sailed.

118. reditūs, "your returns," plur. because they went to their several homes. This is the subject of *quaerendi* (*sunt*). —— **animā**: abl. of means —— **litandum** (*est*): impersonal gerundive, "atonement must be made."

119. Ut, "when"; arrange thus: *ut quae vōx ad aurēs vulgī vēnit.*

120. obstipuēre: perf. 3 pl. of *obstipēscō*. —— **per īma ossa**, "through our *very* bones." —— **īma**: lit. "lowest," *i.e.* right to their extremities.

121. cui fāta parent, "(wondering, as we did) for whom the fates were preparing." —— **parent, poscat**: subjunct. of depend. question, suggested by *tremor*.

122. Hic: adv., "hereupon." —— **Calchanta**: Greek acc. = *Calchantem*.

123. quae sint ea nūmina, "what mean those divine behests?" *nūmen* means the *will* of a god signified by his *nod*. —— **dīvōm** = *dīvōrum*. —— **sint**: why subjunct.?

124. crūdēle: mod *scelus*. —— **canēbant**, "were foretelling"; *canō*, "sing" = "prophesy," because the oracles were delivered in verse.

125. artificis, "of the schemer." —— **tacitī ventura vidēbant**, "silently watched coming events." —— **tacitī**: an adj.

126. bis quinōs: poetic and impressive for *decem*; why the distributive? See Grammar. —— **tectus**, "concealed"; mod. *ille*

129. compositō: abl. used as adv.; "by arrangement." —— **rumpit vocem**, "breaks into speech" (lit. "makes speech break forth"); *vocem* is acc. of effect.

130. adsēnsēre = *adsēnsērunt*. —— **et quae . . . tulēre**, "and what each feared for himself, they bore (when) turned to the destruction of one wretched (mortal)." —— **quae**: n. plur. mod. by *conversa*; note the tense of *timebat*, "had been fearing"; and of *tulēre*, a completed act.

132. infanda, "accursed" (lit. "unutterable"); account for the gender of *dies* here. See Grammar. —— **parārī** = *parābantur*. historical inf.; what is the *case* of the subject?

133. salsae frūgēs, "the salted meal" sprinkled on the heads of

victims before sacrifice. —— **tempora**, "temples" of the head; a special meaning in the plur.; *tempus* really means a *section*, cf. *τέμνω*, *cut*. —— **vittae**: sc. *parārī* = *parābantur*.

134. lētō, "from death"; strange that this should be a dat. of interest.

135. lacū: abl. of location without the prep. —— **in ulvā**, "amidst the sedge."

136. dēlituī: see *delitēscō*. —— **dum vēla darent**, "for them to set sail"; *dum*, "until" takes the subjunct. here to denote a mere expected possibility viewed as a purpose. —— **sī forte dedissent**, "if haply they should have done so"; this is indirect discourse, historical seq., for the fut. perf. indic.

137. spēs: is the subject of the sentence, sc. *est*. —— **patriam**: is the obj. of *videndī*. —— **mihi**: dat. of possession (or interest).

139. fors et: a phrase = "perchance"; this results from *parataxis* or independent syntax, e.g. *fors* (*est*) *et*, "there is a chance and they will." —— **quōs . . . poenās**: double acc. with verb of *asking*; "of whom they will demand." —— **nostra**, "our flight," because the crime attached to the whole family.

141. quod, "wherefore" (lit. "as to which," acc. of specification). —— **te**: obj. of *ōrō*, v. 143. —— **vērī**: obj. gen. mod. *conscia*.

142. sī quā = *sī quae* (*fidēs*) "whatever faith." —— **quae restet**: subjunct. with rel. of characteristic. —— **mortālibus**: dat. of possession; trans. "wherefore, I beseech you by the gods above and by the deities conscious of truth, by whatever faith still remains inviolate anywhere among mortals."

143. miserēre: imperative. —— **labōrum**; obj. gen.; what verbs govern the gen.?

144. nōn dīgna ferentis, "(a mind) bearing things undeserved."

145-198

The plot thickens. From tears, Sinon, encouraged by Priam, passes to an explanation of the horse, as a substitute for the Palladium, and predicts ruin for Troy if they destroy it, and deliverance if they bring it within the city.

145. His lacrimīs, "in response to these tears." —— **ūltrō**, "(pity him) to boot"; we grant him more than he asks.

146. **Ipse primus Priamus**: take these together. —— **virō**: dat. of interest; "(removed) from the man."

148. **āmissōs Graiōs**: this is commonly explained as a rare acc. instead of the gen. obj. of *oblīviscere* (imperative): "forget the lost Greeks"; but why could it not be for *āmissōs esse*, "that the Greeks have been lost"? —— **hinc jam**, "henceforth."

149. **ēdissere**: imperative of *ēdisserō*; "recount these things truly in reply to my question."

150. **Quō**, "to what end" (lit. "whither"). —— **statuēre**: perf. indic.

151. **religiō**, "religious purpose"; "what is its religious purpose or (what) contrivance of war (is it)?"

153. **sustulit**: see *tollō*. —— **vinclis** = *vinculīs*, abl. of separation mod. *exutās*; "freed from chains."

155. **nūmen**, "divinity."

156. **quōs fūgī**: note the transitive force of *fugiō*. —— **deūm** = *deōrum*. —— **hostia**, "victim."

157. **fās mihi**: sc. *est*. —— **jura**, "obligations," "ties."

158. **virōs**: not "mankind," but "the men." —— **ferre sub aurās**, "bring to light."

159. **sī quă tegunt**: (*quă* = *quae*, n. plur.); "whatever (lit. 'if aught') they conceal"; arrange the latter part of the line thus: *nec teneor lēgibus ūllīs patriae*.

160. **Tū modo** . . ., "Do thou, O Troy, only abide by thy promises and being kept, keep faith, if I bring (lit. 'shall bring') the truth and pay back a great price." —— **promissis**: abl. of location.

161. **feram, rependam**: fut. indic. in a *vivid future condition*. —— **māgna**: n. plur.

162. **fidūcia bellī**, "confidence in the war begun." —— **bellī**: obj. gen.

163. **auxiliīs**, "by the aid"; abl. of means. —— **ex quō**: sc. *tempore*; "ever since" (lit. "from what time").

164. **Tȳdīdēs**, "son of Tydeus," Diomēdes, or Diomede, Greek champion next to Achilles in prowess. —— **sed enim**: omit *enim* in translating.

165. **adgressī**, "having essayed." —— **templō**: abl. of separation. —— **fātāle**: mod. *Palladium*.

167. **corripuēre**: perf. indic.

168. ausi: sc. *sunt*.

169. ex illo: sc. *tempore*.

169–170. "But ever since the impious son of Tydeus and Ulysses, the inventor of crimes, having essayed to tear the fateful Palladium from the holy temple, after slaying the guards of the citadel on high, dared with blood-stained hands to touch the virgin fillets of the goddess, from that time forth the hope of the Greeks began to ebb (historical inf.) and having slipped away, began to be carried backward." The metaphor at the close refers to the "ground swell" of a wave washing up some object and sucking it back again.

171. ea signa: (lit. "those signs") "signs of that." —— **Trītōnia** = *Minerva*.

172. positum: sc. *est*; note the abruptness of omitting **cum** ("when") before *ārsēre*.

173. lūminibus arrēctīs, "in her starting eyes," abl. of location. —— **salsusque** . . . "and a briny sweat coursed o'er her limbs."

174. ipsa: the goddess herself. —— **sōlō**, "from the ground" (*sŏlum*). —— **dictu**: abl. supine; see Grammar.

176. temptanda: sc. *esse*. —— **canit**: see note on 124.

178. nī repetant: subjunct. in a subord. clause of indirect discourse; but notice *āvexēre* in v. 179, indic. because part of an explanation thrown in by the author, not quoted. —— **Argīs**: loc. abl. of *Argī*, *-ōrum*; Eng. name is Argos.

179. pelagō: abl. of *the way by which* (really *the means*).

180. quod, "as to the fact that"; *quod* a conj. —— **patriās**, "native," adj. mod. *Mycēnās*; why does the poet select Mycenae as their destination? Of what cities was Agamemnon king?

181. deōs comitēs, "preparing the gods as their companions," *i.e.* to bring back the good will of the gods. —— **remēnsō**: perf. part. of *remetior*; an instance of a deponent. perf. part. used in a pass. sense, "having retraversed the sea, they will arrive unexpectedly."

184. quae piāret, "to atone for"; rel. of characteristic = *ut ea*. —— **statuēre**: perf. indic.

185. tamen . . ., "*yet* this mass Calchas bade them raise up huge and high with woven oak beams and build it to the sky."

186. caelō: poetic dat. of the goal for *ad caelum*; the force of *tamen* is rather difficult to see; he means that what he has said may account for the mere *building* of the horse; but "why make it so high?"

187. portis: abl. of means or the way by which.

188. antīquā sub religiōne, "beneath its ancient holy shelter."

189. violāsset: the pluperf. subjunct. in indirect disc., historical seq., for the fut. perf. indic.

191. imperiō: dat. of interest. —— **futūrum**: sc. *esse*.

192. manibus: abl. of means.

193. Asiam: this is all indirect discourse; pred. *venturam* (*esse*). —— **Pelopea moenia**, "walls of Pelops," *i.e.* "Grecian walls." —— Pelops, the mythical hero of the Peloponnesus or lower peninsula of Greece, in which were the cities Sparta, Argos, Mycenae, the homes of Menelaus and Agamemnon.

194. nostrōs nepōtēs: obj. of *manēre* ("await"), here transitive.

195. īnsidiīs: abl. of means; "through such wiles and the cunning of perjured Sinon."

196. crēdita: sc. *est*; *crēdō* takes a dat. of the person and in that connection in the passive must be used impersonally, e.g. *mihi crēditum est*; here, however, of the thing, it is used transitively and personally; "the story was believed." —— **captī**: sc. *sunt* or *sumus*; "and we were ensnared by wiles and forced tears, whom neither Tydeus' son nor Larissaean Achilles, not ten years, not a thousand ships, subdued."

197. Tӯdīdēs: Diomede. —— **Lārissaeus**: = "Thessalian" because Larissa was a town in northern Thessaly, though not the birthplace of Achilles.

198. carīnae, "keels" put for "ships," a figure called *synechdoche*, *i.e.* the part for the whole.

199–227

Laocoōn's fate. — Twin serpents from Tenedos attack the priest on the shore and destroy him with his two sons. Then they seek the shelter of Minerva's statue.

199. Hīc aliud . . ., "Hereupon another greater and much more (*multō magis*) dreadful (sight) is presented to (us) wretched ones." —— **aliud**: lit. "another thing."

201. ductus: "drawn," *i.e.* "chosen." Laocoön was priest of both Apollo and Neptune, the two guardian deities of Troy. It was they who, according to the myth, built the walls of Troy.

202. ad sollemnēs ārās, "at the accustomed altar."

204. orbibus: abl. of description; possibly of manner.

205. pelagō: dat. ind. obj. of *incumbunt*; "bear down upon the sea" or "are breasting the sea."

208. volūmine, "in writhing" or "in coils."

209. Note the alliterative and imitative harmony in the repetition of the hissing sound of *s*. —— **tenēbant**, "were gaining."

210. "Suffused as to their blazing eyes with blood and fire." —— **oculōs**: acc. of specification.

212. vīsū: abl. of cause from *vīsus, ūs*; "at the sight." —— **agmine certō**, "with unerring aim."

213. Lāocoönta: note the Greek acc. for *Lāocoöntem*. —— **prīmum**: adv.

215. morsū (lit. "with their bite"), "with their fangs."

216. post: adv. —— **auxiliō**: dat. of purpose.

218. medium, "his waist." —— **bis collō . . .**: *collō* is dat. ind. obj. of *datī*; *terga* is acc. of specification; *circum* is an adv.; "twice having thrown their scaly backs (lit. 'being thrown as to their backs') about his neck, they overtop him with their heads and towering necks."

221. vittās: acc. of specification.

223. quālis mūgītus: sc. *est* (lit. "of which kind is the bellowing when"); "such as is the bellowing when a bull, wounded, has fled the altar and shaken off the erring blade from his neck"; the perfs. *fūgit* and *excussit* may be taken as *gnomic aorists*, *i.e.* perfects describing a *universal truth* as deduced from past experience "what has been, always is." This perfect is habitual in *similes*.

225. lāpsū, "with gliding motion." —— **dēlūbra ad summa**, "to the shrine on high," *i.e.* Minerva's temple in the acropolis, where all the temples and other public buildings, including Priam's palace, were situated.

226. arcem, "the stronghold." —— **Trītōnidis**: gen. of *Trītōnis*, an epithet of Minerva.

Notice that the actual death of Laocoön is passed over.

228-249

The Trojans, already wavering as a result of Sinon's story, are now convinced that the horse is sacred and that Laocoön and his advice are to be abhorred. They make a breach in the walls, and with pomp and rejoicing bring the monster into the city. Heedless of certain ominous sounds from within the horse and of the warning of the ill-fated Cassandra, they persist.

228. cūnctīs: dat. of interest; trans. as a possessive.

229. merentem: turn as adv.; "deservedly."

230. ferunt = *dīcunt.*

231. quī . . . laeserit: causal rel. = *cum is*, with the subjunct. —— **tergō**: dat. = *in tergum.*

232. ad sēdēs, "into the city" (lit. "the homes").

233. A hemistich: see note on v. 66. —— **nūmina**, "the majesty."

235. accingunt: here used intransitively for *accingunt sē*; "they gird for the work." —— **operī**: dat. of purpose. —— **pedibus**: dat. ind. obj. of compound *subiciunt*; "beneath the feet they place gliding rollers" (lit. "the glidings of wheels").

236. collō: abl.; "from the neck."

237. "The fateful contrivance 'scales' the walls with its teeming load of arméd men." —— **scandit**: a bold expression, but very suggestive.

238. fēta armīs, "teeming (lit. 'pregnant') with arms."

239. sacra, "hymns" (lit. "sacred (songs)"). —— **contingere gaudent**, "delights to touch," a poetic use of the complementary inf. for *contingendō.*

240. mediae urbī = *in mediam urbem.*

241. dīvōm = *dīvōrum.* —— **bellō**: abl. of means or specification.

242. Dardanidum = *Dardanidārum*, "Trojans," as the sons of Dardanus.

243. uterō, "from the womb"; abl. of source.

245. sacrātā arce: sc. *in*; the poetic tendency to use the bare abl. of location.

246. fātīs, "with warnings of the future"; abl. of manner.

247. ōra, "her mouth," poetic plur. —— **crēdita**: here the regu-

lar construction of *crēdō* is decidedly abandoned. See note on v. 196. Look up the story of Cassandra.

249. **deūm** = *deōrum*. —— **quibus esset**: causal rel. = *cum nobis*.

250–267

Night falls on the Trojans wearied with rejoicing. The Greek fleet steals back from Tenedos. Sinon opens the horse and releases the heroes. The guards of the gates are slain and the horde from without is admitted.

250. **vertitur**, "revolves." —— **Ōceanō**, "from the Ocean," *i.e.* the Atlantic or the West, the home of darkness.

252. **fūsī**, "scattered"; see *fundō*.

255. "Through the friendly stillness of the silent moon."

256. **lītora nōta**, "well-known shores," because they had lived there ten years.

257. **extulerat**: the pluperf. conveys the idea of suddenness.

263. **Pēlīdēs**, "the son (really grandson) of Peleus." This was Neoptolemus or Pyrrhus, the son of Achilles, who had succeeded his father in the war. —— **primus**: this presents serious difficulties. Does it mean "first in order of exit"? Then why mention him seventh? Does it mean "foremost," "peerless"? But Machaon was comparatively obscure in the war. Perhaps it means "peerless" or "foremost" as a physician and son of the god of healing, Aesculapius.

265. **somnō vīnōque sepultam**, "sunk in drunken slumber"; a case of *hendiadys*.

266. **portīs**, "through the gates"; abl. of the way or the means.

267. **agmina cōnscia**, "confederate bands," because in the secret. —— **iungunt**, "unite."

268–297

In my dreams Hector appears in woe-begone plight and urges me to flee, taking with me the national gods of Troy, which he places in my hands.

268. **quō**: abl. of time. —— **mortālibus**: dat. of interest.

269. **dōnō**: abl. of means; "by the gift." —— **dīvūm** = *dīvōrum*.

271. **vīsus**: sc. *est*. —— **largōs**, "copious."

272. **ut,** "as."

273. **perque pedēs** . . ., "pierced through his swollen feet with thongs." —— **lōra**: acc. of specification where *lōris*, abl., would have been expected.

274. **ei,** "alas." —— **quantum,** "how (changed)"; acc. of extent.

275. **exuviās indūtus,** "having donned the spoils of Achilles." —— **indūtus**: really a perf. pass. part., "clad in"; but here used as a deponent. —— **redit**: seems to be vivid pres.; possibly for *rediit*.

276. **jaculātus**: "having hurled." —— **puppibus**: dat. = *in puppēs*. —— **ignis, sanguis, crinis**: note these masc. exceptions in *-is*. Mention others you have met.

278. **gerēns**: note the *zeugma* (double meaning) in this verbal word; "wearing a beard and hair" and "carrying wounds." —— **plūrima,** "in large numbers."

279. **ultrō,** "of my own accord."

281. **Teucrūm** = *Teucrōrum*.

282. **tenuēre**: perf., sc. *tē*.

283. **exspectāte**: voc. of *expectātus* mod. *Hector* appositively. —— **ut,** "how," *i.e.* "how gladly."

284. **labōrēs,** "hardships."

285. **defessī,** "in our weariness."

287. **mē quaerentem vāna morātur,** "heeds my idle questions." —— **morātur,** "delays over," used transitively.

288. **dūcēns,** "drawing."

289. **nāte deā,** "thou goddess born." —— **nate**: voc. —— **deā**: abl. of source or origin.

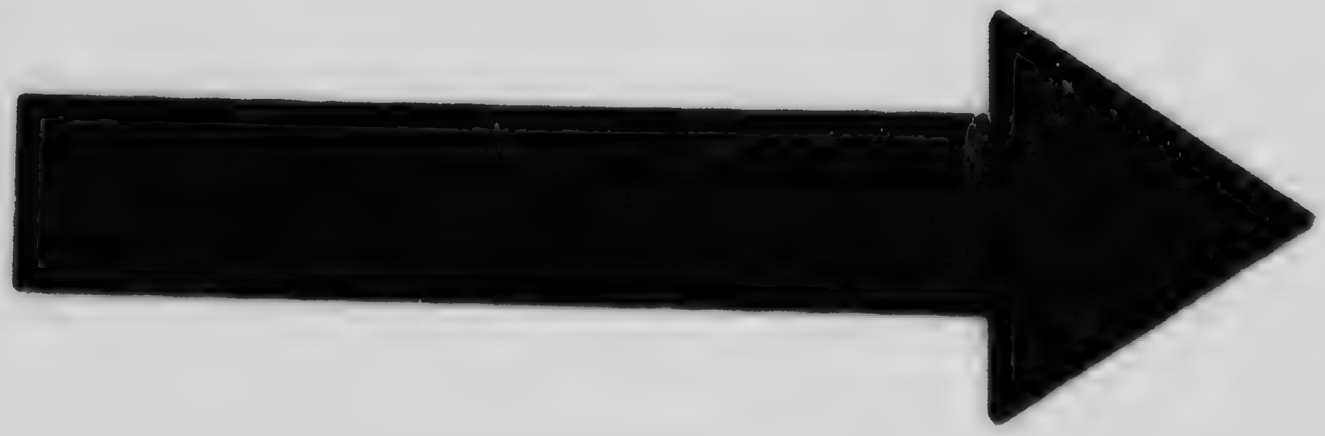
291. **datum**: sc. *est*.

292. "If Troy could be defended by (any) right hand, even by this (of mine) would it have been defended." —— **possent**: contrary to fact in the *pres.*; or with a general application to all time. —— **fuissent**: contrary to fact in the *past*.

294. **hīs**: dat.; "for these."

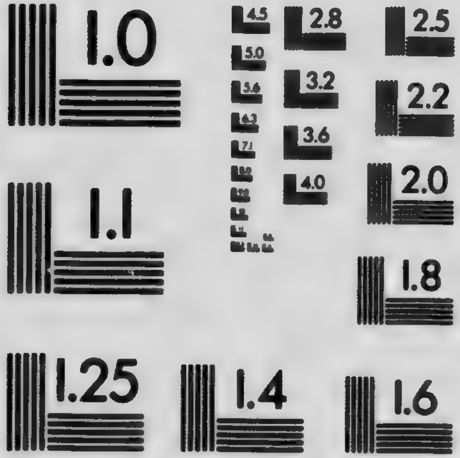
295. **māgna**: take in this order, *quae statuēs māgna*; "which thou shalt build up to greatness"; the adj. is an obj. pred.

296. **vittās Vestamque potentem**: a hendiadys; "the filleted image of the mighty Vesta."



MICROCOPY RESOLUTION TEST CHART

(ANSI and ISO TEST CHART No. 2)



APPLIED IMAGE Inc
1653 East Main Street
Rochester, New York 14609 USA
(716) 482 - 0300 - Phone
(716) 288 - 5989 - Fax

297. adytīs penetrālibus, "from the innermost shrine"; *adytum* was the "holy of holies," the sacred inner recess of the temple whither no profane foot entered.

298–317

Aeneas, awakened, hastens to his father's roof-top and gets the first glimpse of the conflagration. A sudden impulse to rush to arms seizes him.

298. dīversō, "in divers quarters"; adj. mod. *lūctū.* —— **miscentur,** "are confused."

299. magis atque magis: mod. *clārēscunt;* "clearer and clearer grow the sounds." —— **quamquam sēcrēta,** "although the house of my father, Anchises, stood back (*recessit*), apart and concealed by trees."

301. ingruit horror, "the horrid din of arms rushes in upon me."

302. summī fastīgia tēctī, "the very peak of the roof-top."

303. ascēnsū s[illegible]rō, "I climb." —— **arrēctīs,** "attentive," "eagerly listening," "strained" (lit. "directed toward").

304. "As when a flame seizes upon a corn-field, when the south winds are raging, or a sweeping torrent with its mountain flood lays low the fields, lays low the joyous crops and the labors of the oxen, and drags the forests headlong; in puzzled wonder stands the unwary shepherd, catching the sound on the high summit of a rock."

306. sternit: note the rhetorical emphasis given by the repetition. Note the details of this simile, — the hopeless scene of destruction, the resistless rush of flame or tide, the sudden bewilderment of the person most interested (the shepherd) — and apply them to the case of Aeneas.

309. manifēsta fidēs, "the truth is clear."

311. Vulcano, "Vulcan," the god of fire, therefore fire itself.

312. Ucalegōn: the owner put for his house. —— **Sīgēa . . .** "and the broad channels of Sigeum gleam back."

314. nec sat ratiōnis: "nor in arms have I sufficient purpose"; it is a senseless proceeding.

315. glomerāre manum bellō, "gather a band for war."

316. mentem, "my thoughts"; distinguish here *animī,* "the

feelings," "heart," "emotions" from *mentem*, the intellectual, reasoning part of his being.

317. pulchrum: sc. *esse*; "it occurs to me that it is a glorious thing (how glorious it is)."

318–335

Panthus, a priest, tells Aeneas of the peril.

318. tēlīs: abl. of separation. —— **Achīvūm** = *Achīvōrum*.

319. Ōthryadēs, "son of Othrys." —— **arcis** . . ., "priest of Apollo in the citadel"; *hendiadys*.

320. sacra: n. pl; "the sacred images of the vanquished gods"; another *hendiadys*.

321. trahit: *zeugma*; "*carries* the images . . . and *drags* the boy." —— **cursū**: (lit. "with running") "in frantic haste." —— **ad līmina**, "to my door." —— **tendit**, "makes his way."

322. quō . . . locō, "How stands the general safety?"; *rēs summa*, the supreme consideration, the welfare of the state. —— **prēndimus**, "what stronghold have we (Trojans) seized?"

324. summa diēs, "the final day and the inevitable hour."

325. Fuimus Trōes, "we Trojans have been," *i.e.* "have had our day," "we are a thing of the past."

326. ferus: may be rendered as an adv.; "in angry pride." —— **omnia**, "all power." —— **Argōs**: acc. pl. of *Argī, -ōrum*; "to Argos"; why is *ad* omitted?

327. incēnsā, "hold sway in a city in flames."

328. adstāns, "standing close."

329. miscet, "insolently spreads the flames."

330. portīs: abl. of the way, or means.

331. "All the thousands that ever came from great Mycenae."

332. obsēdēre: perf. of *obsideō*. —— **angusta viārum** = *angustās viās*.

333. stat ferrī . . ., "the edge of the sword stands unsheathed with gleaming point, ready for death." —— **mūcrōne**: abl. of description, mod. *aciēs*.

334. vix prīmī . . ., "scarcely do the foremost guards of the gates essay battle, and it is in blind (or aimless) warfare that they resist."

336-354

Aeneas collects a band of followers and incites them to reckless daring.

336. **tālibus dictīs**: abl. of cause or means. —— **nūmine**, "by the will of the gods."

337. **quō**: adv.; "whither." —— **Erīnys**, "the fell Fury," the War Fiend.

338. **aethera**: Greek acc. sing. for *aetherem*.

340. **oblātī**, "meeting me" (lit. "presented").

342. **illīs diēbus**, "during those last days (of the war)." —— **forte**, "by chance."

344. **gener**, "as if in truth a son-in-law," "with all the zeal of a son-in-law"; he was only betrothed; read the story of Cassandra.

345. **quī nōn audierit**: causal. rel.; "in that he heeded not." —— **praecepta**, "warnings." —— **furentis**: (lit. "raving") "frenzied," because inspired with a supernatural gift of prophecy. Note the pathos; even her lover heeded her not.

346. A *hemistich*.

347. **audēre in proelia**, "bold for battle."

348. **super**: adv.; "furthermore." —— **hīs**: sc. *verbīs*; "in these words." —— **fortissima** . . ., "hearts uselessly brave."

349. **pectora**: in apposition to *juvenēs*, or to be taken independently as another vocative. —— **vōbīs**: sc. *est*; "if you have"; dat. of possession. —— **audentem extrēma** (n. pl.), "one daring extremities." —— **cupīdō certa**, "fixed desire."

350. **quae sit rēbus fortūna**, "what the fortune of affairs is," depend. quest. —— **rēbus**: dat. of interest.

351. **excessēre . . . dī**: it was a common notion that the gods deserted a doomed city. Josephus relates that before the fall of Jerusalem, voices more than human were heard crying on the day of Pentecost, "μεταβαίνωμεν ἐντεῦθεν," "let us go hence."

352. **quibus**: abl. of means; "by whose grace."

353. **moriāmur**: subjunct. of exhortation; note the inverted order of events: "Let us die and rush into battle"; an example of *hysteron proteron* (a rhetorical placing of the "cart before the horse"). It means, of course, "Let us make up our minds to die and (then) rush into battle."

354. "The one safety for the vanquished is to hope for no safety;" *i.e.* you must risk your life in order to save it.

355–369

They attack the Greeks.

355. lupī ceu = *sīcut lupī*, or the Greek λύκοι ὥς.

356. raptōrēs: to be treated as an adj.; "ravenous." —— **improba ventris rabiēs**, "hunger"; *improba* denotes that which is *excessive*, *troublesome*, *painful*.

357. caecōs, "blinded (made reckless) by fury," *i.e.* to prowl at random. —— **relictī**, "left at home."

358. exspectant: sc. *eōs*. —— **faucibus**: abl. of manner. —— **siccīs**, "parched," "blood-thirsty."

359. mediae urbis iter, "the road that leads to the heart of the city" *urbis*, poss. gen.

360. cavā, "encircling" (lit. "hollow").

361. fandō, "in story"; abl. of means.

362. explicet: potential subjunc.; "who would (or could) unfold." —— **lacrimīs aequāre labōrēs**, "match our sufferings with his tears."

363. domināta, "after holding sway"; depon. participle.

364. sternuntur inertia: *inertia* may very effectively be taken as predicative or proleptic; "lie helpless."

367. quondam, "at times"; usually "formerly," "once upon a time." The question here is whether Vergil means 367 as a broad and general statement ("the vanquished" generally) applied with particular reference, in the next line, to the Trojans ("and on such occasions the Greeks fall"), or whether *victīs* simply means the vanquished of this night. The first seems the better interpretation. —— **victīs**: dat. of interest; render as possessive gen.

368. ubīque, "everywhere"; disting. from *ubique*, "wherever."

369. pavōr: note the long *o*, an archaic form; possibly here explained by the caesural pause. —— **plūrima imāgō**, "many a form of death."

370–401

The destruction of Androgeos and his band, who mistake us for comrades. The Trojans, encouraged by the mistake, disguise themselves and slay many unawares.

370. catervā: abl. abs. —— **Danaūm**: partitive gen. mod. *prīmus*. —— **sē**: obj. of *offert*.

371. socia agmina crēdēns: sc. *nōs esse*.

372. īnscius, "in his ignorance." —— **amīcīs**: adj.; "friendly."

373. morātur: sc. *vōs*.

374. rapiunt feruntque, "plunder and pillage," = the Greek φέρειν καὶ ἄγειν.

374–375. We have here a good example of *parataxis* or independent, collateral syntax, where ordinary discourse would call for *hypotaxis* or subordination: "others are plundering . . . ; but are you now for the first time going . . . ?" *Hypotaxis* would read, "while others are plundering . . ., are you," etc.

377. fīda, "trustworthy." —— **sēnsit . . . dēlāpsus**: a Graecism for *sēnsit sē dēlāpsum esse*; the literal rendering would be "having fallen, he perceived the fact."

378. pedem cum vōce, "backward checked both foot and voice."

379–381. "Just as one who unawares amidst thorny brambles, treading heavily on the ground, presses a snake, and in alarm suddenly shrinks back (from it) as it rises in anger and puffs out its dark blue neck." —— **inprōvīsum**: adj. mod. *anguem*; note the gender of *anguis* and *sentis*. —— **sentibus**: abl. of location without the prep. —— **humī**: loc. gen. —— **nītēns**, "struggling," "bearing hard" —— **trepidus**: adj. mod. *quī*. —— **pressit, refūgit**: instantaneous perf. to denote suddenness. —— **attollentem**: mod. *eum*, understood object of *refūgit* used transitively, lit. "from it as it raises its wrath." —— **colla**: acc. of specification; "swelling as to its neck."

382. vīsū: abl. of means; "by the sight." —— **abībat**, "began to retreat" (lit. "was in the act of retreating").

383. circumfundimur, "crowd around him"; passive in a middle voice or reflexive sense = *nōs circumfundimus*, "pour ourselves around him." —— **dēnsīs armīs** should be taken together as abl. of manner.

384. locī: obj. gen. mod. *ignārōs*; see Grammar on adjs. that govern the gen. —— **captōs**, "held spellbound by fear," sc. *eōs*.

385. adspīrat . . ., "favors (smiles upon) our first effort." —— **labōrī**: ind. obj. of compound *adspīrat*.

386. successū . . ., "exulting in success and pride of heart." —— **successū** and **animīs**: abl. of cause.

387. quā: adv.; "where" (lit. "by which way"). —— **salūtis iter**, "the path to safety"; cf. *mediae urbis iter*, 360.

388. dextra: nom. mod. *fortūna*, "propitious." —— **sequāmur**: subjunct. of exhortation; similarly **mūtēmus** and **aptēmus**.

389. īnsīgnia, "emblems," the devices on the shields indicating their nationality. —— **nōbīs**: dat. "upon ourselves."

390. Dolus an virtūs: sc. *sit*. —— **in hoste**, "in the case of an enemy"; "when an enemy has to be dealt with." —— **requīrat**: potential subjunct.; "who, in the case of an enemy, would ask whether stratagem or valor (is to be employed)?" or, "whether such a thing is trickery or courage," meaning that it is all one.

392. īnsīgne: here a noun (really neut. of *īnsīgnis*), "the shield of beauteous design" (lit. "the beauteous design of the shield").

393. induitur: here used as deponent. —— **Argīvum**: adj.; "Argive," mod. *ēnsem* (note the gender).

394. ipse, "too," "also."

396. Danaīs: dat. ind. obj. of *inmixtī*. —— **haud nūmine nostrō**, "under a divinity (or auspices) not our own"; abl. of accompaniment.

398. Orcō: dat. = *ad Orcum*, Hades, god of the lower world.

399–400. aliī . . . pars = *aliī* ("some") . . . *aliī* ("others"); note the plur. *scandunt* with sing. *pars*.

400. formīdine: abl. of cause; "through base fear."

402–434

Coroebus reveals their stratagem by rushing in to rescue Cassandra. The band of Aeneas is scattered.

401. conduntur = *condunt sē*, a middle voice; note the gender of *alvus*.

402. nihil: acc. of specification mod. *fīdere*. —— **quemquam**: subject of *fīdere*. —— **dīvīs**: dat. mod. *fīdere*. —— **fās**: sc. *est*; the subject of *est* is the inf. phrase *quemquam fīdere*, etc.

403. Priamēïa virgō, "Priam's daughter." —— **passīs**: from *pandō*, "spread out"; the phrase is an abl. of descript.; note the gender of *crīnis*.

404. ā templō adytīsque: *hendiadys* for *ā templī adytīs*; it was for this crime that Ajax (the Oïlean) was punished by shipwreck by Minerva.

405. tendēns, "directing." —— **lūmina**: poetic here for "eyes."

406. Note the effective repetition of *lūmina*; "her eyes (I say)." Note the pathos.

407. nōn tulit, "brooked not."

408. medium: probably mod. *agmen*, though it might mod. *sēsē*. —— **peritūrus**, "ready to perish," *i.e.* "to certain death."

410. Hīc: adv.; "here."

411. miserrima caedēs, "most pitiful slaughter."

412. faciē, errōre: abl. of cause; "through the appearance of our armor and the deception (*errōre*) of our Grecian plumes." —— **errōre**, "misunderstanding arising from."

413. gemitū, īrā: abl. of accompaniment; "with a cry of rage (*hendiadys*) at the rescue of the maiden." —— **ēreptae virginis**: obj. gen. mod. *īrā*; some take it as a subjective gen. denoting the *cause* not the *object* of the anger.

415. geminī Atrīdae: Menelaus and Agamemnon. —— **Dolopum**: a Thessalian tribe led by Achilles and later by his son Pyrrhus.

416. "As at times opposing winds, when a whirlwind bursts, engage in conflict." Zephyrus was the West Wind; Notus, the South-East Wind; Eurus, the East Wind.

417. Eōïs equīs, "rejoicing in his steeds of the Dawn."

418. strīdunt, "whistle"; note the imitative alliteration of the hissing *s*.

419. īmō fundō, "from the lowest depths." —— **aequŏra**: observe the gender and short *o*; Nereus was father of the sea-nymphs or Nereids. —— **spūmeus**: *proleptic*; "till he foams."

420. sī quōs, "whomsoever" (lit. "if any").

421. tōtā urbe, "through all the city"; abl. of the way.

422. mentīta tēla, "the lying weapons."

423. ōra sonō discordia sīgnant, "they mark our speech (lit. "mouths") differing in sound (from their own)." —— **sonō**: abl. of specification.

425. dīvae armipotentis: Minerva.

426. jūstissimus ūnus, "by far the most just"; *ūnus* used for emphasis.

428. **dīs aliter vīsum**: sc. *est*. "It seemed otherwise to the gods"; as they proved by allowing his untimely death.

429. **plūrima pietās**, "thy great piety."

430. **lābentem**, "in thy fall."

431. **cinerēs**: voc.; note the gender and declension.

432. **testor**: sc. *vōs*.

433. **vītāvisse**: sc. *mē* as subject. —— **vicēs**, "chance encounters with"; *vicēs* implies interchange and here may mean the "give and take" of hand-to-hand fighting. —— **et sī Fāta** . . . "and if the Fates had been that I should fall, that I earned it by my hand"; with *meruisse*, sc. *mē* as subject.

435–468

The scene shifts to Priam's palace, whither Aeneas hastens in despair. A terrific battle is in progress. Aeneas enters by a postern and ascends to the roof.

435. Note the nervous haste of this and the next two lines shown in the omission of the predicates. —— **aevō**: abl. of cause.

436. **gravior**, "rather sluggish." —— **Ulixī**: subjective gen.; "wound from Ulysses."

437. **vocātī**: sc. *sumus*.

438. **pugnam**: obj. of *cernimus*, 441. —— **ceu**: = *velut sī*.

439. **forent**: = *essent*, condition *contrary to fact in a cotemporaneous sense*.

440. **sīc**: merely sums up the sense of the previous clause. —— **Martem indomitum**, "unbridled warfare"; a repetition of *ingentem pugnam*.

441. **āctā**, "advancing" (lit. "brought to bear upon them").

442. In scanning, *pārietibus* lengthens a naturally short *a* because the *i* is thickened into a consonant = *j* sounded as *y*; see rule for a vowel before two consonants, Metre, p. 12, Introduction.

443. **nītuntur gradibus**, "are forcing their way up step by step"; *gradibus* is abl. of the way by which. —— **clipeōsque** . . ., "and in self-defence (*prōtectī*) they present their shields to the darts with their left hands."

445. **contrā**: adv.; "on the other hand." —— **domōrum**: poetic plur.

446. his: mod. *tēlīs.* —— **quandō**, "since."

447. extrēma jam in morte, "(being) now in the extremity of death," "on the verge of death."

448. veterum decora . . ., "high adornments of their sires of old"; there are two readings here, — *illa* and *alta*; the former would mean "those famous."

451. instaurātī animī, "our courage is renewed." —— **succurrere**: complement to *instaurātī*. Note the *method* displayed in this description: 1. The external view from the street — the Greeks assaulting, the Trojans on the roof defending. 2. A closer view of the defence — an experience of Aeneas as one of the defenders, after he had entered and joined the Trojans on the roof; terrible and widespread slaughter of Greeks caused by a falling tower — the failure to stem the tide of assault. 3. The climax — Pyrrhus in glittering armor — the main door smashed in — the despair within.

453. Limen erat . . ., "An entrance there was with (lit. 'and') secret doors and a well-worn thoroughfare between the apartments of Priam, one with the other (*inter sē*), a postern gate (now) deserted, by which unhappy Andromache once used to betake herself"; the *and's* denoted by *-que* after *caecae* and after *postēs* should be ignored as mere connectives of apposition.

455. To get the full force of this picture the pupil should read, either in the original or in a translation (say Pope's), Homer's picture of the last farewell between Hector and Andromache in the *Iliad*, Book VI. The reference to the child Astyanax is almost meaningless without an acquaintance with this famous scene. Read the story of Andromache's fate.

457. ad socerōs, "to the house of her husband's parents" (lit. "parents-in-law"). —— **avō**: poetic dat. = *ad avum.*

458. ad summī fastīgia culminis, "to the slopes of the roof-top."

460. Turrim: obj. of *convellimus* and *impulimus*; divide this sentence as follows: "There was a tower standing . . .; this, having assailed it . . ., we tore up from its high foundations and drove headlong." —— **ferrō**, "with axes" (lit. "with steel.")

462. solitae: sc. *sunt;* this predicate agrees in gender and number with the nearest subject, *nāvēs*, though understood in sense with *omnis Trōja* and *Achāica castra.*

469-505

Pyrrhus leads on the attack, gains an entrance through the front door and slaughters the occupants.

469. vēstibulum: here "entrance" explained and repeated in *prīmōque līmine.*

471. quālis ubi . . ., "such as a snake, that has fed on poisonous (*mala*) herbs — one which, swollen, beneath the earth the cold winter had been concealing, but now renewed, with old skin cast, and shining with youth it rolls into the light its slimy back, with breast uplifted, towering towards the sun, and in its mouth it darts with three-forked tongue"; ignore *ubi*, "when," in translating.

Examine this simile carefully, giving (*a*) the details that form a parallel in the comparison; (*b*) the details inserted merely to heighten the effect of horror and dread so far as the serpent is concerned.

Look up the story of Achilles' death and the coming of Pyrrhus.

---

478. tēctō: = *ad tēctum.*

479. Note that **dūra** belongs to *līmina; correptā* and *bipennī* form an abl. abs. phrase.

480. Observe the exceptional gender of *postis* and *cardō.*

482. lātō ōre fenestram, "an opening with broad mouth."

485. in līmine prīmō, "on the very edge of the threshold," so bold were they in defence.

486. domus interior, "the interior of the dwelling," on the same principle as *summus mōns, media urbs.*

487. aedēs, in the plur., "house"; in the sing., "temple."

488. ferit: from *feriō*, "strike"; see Vocabulary.

489. tēctīs ingentibus: abl. of the way by which.

490. amplexae . . ., "hold the doorposts in fond embrace and imprint kisses thereon." —— **amplexae**: perf. part. of *amplector*, mod. *mātrēs.*

491. vī patriā, "with his father's might." —— **patriā**: adj.

492. valent: = *possunt*; "avail to." —— **āriete**: *a* lengthened as before two consonants, *i* being given the *j* or *y* value; see note on v. 442. —— **crēbrō**, "frequent blows of the . . ."

493. ēmōti, "dislodged." —— **cardine**: abl. of separation, mod. probably *ēmōti*, but possibly *prōcumbunt*.

494. Fit via vī: probably a studied brevity by way of imitation. —— **aditūs**: may be taken as acc. of effect; "break an entrance."

495. mīlite: poetic collective sing. = *mīlitibus*; cf. v. 20.

496. sīc: belongs to *fertur . . . furēns*; "not so furiously does a river — when after bursting the barriers it escapes foaming and breaks down the opposing dykes with its flood — rush upon the fields in a heap and drag down herds with their stalls through all the plains."

500. Neoptolemum: = Pyrrhus; *Pyrrhus* meant "red-haired"; *Neoptolemus*, "late to the war"; the latter was a sort of "nickname."

501. centum nurūs: properly *nurus* means a "daughter-in-law," but, as Priam had only fifty sons, the expression must include by poetic license his fifty daughters along with the wives of his sons. Homer (*Iliad*, VI, 244, 248) mentions fifty sons and *twelve* daughters; the idea of fifty daughters is obtained from other writers.

504. barbaricō, "barbaric," really "foreign" because captured in war. It also has a special reference to the East.

VOCABULARY TO VERGIL, AENEID II

A

ā, ab (abs), prep. (abl.), *from, away from; on the side of, on; after, since; by.*

abdō, ere, didī, ditum, *hide;* of a sword, *plunge.*

abeō, īre, iī (īvī), itum, *go from, go away, depar..*

abiēs, etis, f., *fir-tree; fir, pine.*

ablātus, from **auferō**.

abluō, ere, luī, lūtum, *wash away; purify.*

abnegō, āre, etc., *refuse, decline.*

abstineō, ēre, tinuī, tentum, *keep back; refrain.*

absum, abesse, āfuī, *be far away, be absent, be distant; be wanting.*

ac, = **atque**, *and, and further;* in comparisons, *than, as.*

Acamās, antis, m., a Greek warrior.

accīdō, ere, cīdī, cīsum, *cut into, hew.*

accingō, ere, cīnxī, cīnctum, *gird on, arm one's self with;* in pass., *gird one's self with, gird on; make ready.*

accipiō, ere, cēpī, ceptum, *receive, take; hear, learn; welcome.*

accommodō, āre, etc., *fit.*

ācer, ācris, ācre, *sharp; eager, violent, fierce, keen, bitter.*

acernus, a, um, *of maple, maple-.*

Achāicus, a, um, *Achaean, Grecian.*

Achillēs, is, m., the bravest of the Greeks fighting against Troy.

Achīvus, a, um, *Achaean, Grecian;* as subst. in plur., *the Greeks.*

aciēs, ēi, f., *edge* (of a sword); *line of battle, line, battle; keen sight.*

ad, prep. (acc.), *to, toward; against; at, on; according to.*

addō, ere, didī, ditum, *add, give.*

adeō, īre, iī (īvī), itum, *approach; meet, attack.*

adeō, adv., *so much, to such a degree, so; in fact, indeed.*

adflīgō (afflīgō), ere, flīxī, flīctum, *strike down;* **adflīctus**, *crushed, dejected, dashed down.*

adflō, flāre, etc., *breathe upon.*

adfluō, ere, fluxī, *flow to, throng to.*

adfor, fārī, fātus, *speak to, address.*

adglomerō, āre, etc., *roll to, join (one's self to).*

adgredior, ī, gressus, *advance to; attack; undertake, essay.*

adhūc, adv., *hither; hitherto, as yet; still, yet.*

aditus, ūs, m., *entrance, approach, access; means of approach.*

admīror, ārī, ātus, *gaze at with wonder, marvel at.*

adōrō, āre, etc., *adore, worship; entreat.*

adsentiō, īre, sēnsī, sēnsum, *agree. assent.*

adservō, āre, etc., *guard, watch.*

adspīrō, āre, etc. (dat.), *breathe (with favor) upon.*

adstō, stare, stetī, *stand by* or *near; stand.*

adsum, adesse, adfuī, *be present, be at hand; come forward; aid, assist.*

adversus, a, um, part. of **advertō**, *turned toward, facing, opposite, in front; unfavorable, opposing, hostile.*

advertō, ere, tī, sum, *turn toward;* with **animum**, *give heed to.*

adytum, ī, n., *the innermost part of a temple, the sanctuary, shrine.*

aedēs, is, f., (sing.) *temple;* (plur.) *house, court.*

aedificō, āre, etc., *build, construct.*

aeger, gra, grum, *ill, sick, sickly, feeble; weary; sad, sick at heart.*

Aenēās, ae, m., *Aeneas*, the hero of the *Aeneid.*

aēnus, a, um, adj., *of brass, bronze, copper;* the neut. as a subst., *copper vessel, cauldron.* (**aes.**)

aequaevus, a, m., *of equal age.*

aequō, āre, etc., *make smooth; make equal; do justice to, measure, match; keep pace with; equal.*

aequor, ŏris, n., *surface, surface of the sea, sea, waves.*

aequus, a, um, *even, level; equal; impartial, righteous; fair, friendly, propitious, favorable.*

aerātus, a, um, *covered with,* or *made of, bronze; bronze-plated.* (**aes.**)

aes, aeris, n., *copper, brass, bronze.*

aestus, ūs, m., *heat, surging fire; surge, surf; waves, tide.*

aetās, tātis, f., *age; years, old age; a time, an age.*

aeternus, a, um, *eternal, everlasting, undying.*

aeternum, adv., *for ever, eternally.*

aethēr, eris, m., *the upper air, the ether; the heavens, the sky; heaven.*

aevum, ī, n., *age, time.*

ager, agrī, m., *land; field, country.*

agger, eris, m., *mound, heap, embankment; rampart.*

agitātor, ōris, m., *driver, charioteer.*

agitō, āre, etc., *drive, pursue; persecute, toss about; rouse, hasten.*

agmen, minis, n., *train, band; current, course; column, army.*

agnōscō, ere, gnōvī, gnitum, *recognize.*

agō, ere, ēgī, āctum, *drive, do, make; spend, pass;* **age**, imperative, *come now.*

agricola, ae, m., *husbandman, farmer, peasant.*

āiō, defective vb., *say yes; say, affirm.*

Ajāx, ācis, m., the name of two warriors among the Greeks before Troy; see Appendix.

aliquī, qua, quod, indef. adj., *some.*

aliquis, qua, quid, indef. pron. *some one;* also as adj., *some.*

aliter, adv., *otherwise;* **haud aliter**, *just so.*

alius, a, ud, *another, other;* in plur., *others;* if repeated in sing., *one . . . another;* in plur., *some . . . others.*

almus, a, um, *fostering, bountiful; kindly, gracious.*

altāria, ium, n. pl., *an altar.*

alter, era, erum, *the other;* if repeated, *the one . . . the other.*

altus, a, um, *high, lofty; deep, profound;* neut. as subst., **altum**, ī, n., *heaven, the sky; the deep, the sea.*

alvus, i, f., *belly.*

ambiguus, a, um, *doubtful, mysterious.*

ambō, ae, ō, in plur. only, *both.*

āmēns, entis, *beside one's self, distracted, frantic.*

amīcus, a, um, *friendly, kindly.*

amīcus, ī, m., *friend.*

āmittō, ere, mīsī, missum, *let go; lose.*

amnis, is, m., *stream, river.*

amor, ōris, m., *love, longing, desire.*

amplector, ī, plexus sum, *embrace, cling to.*

amplus, a, um, *large, spacious.*

an, conj., *or; whether.*

anceps, cipitis, *two-headed, double; doubtful.*

Anchīsēs, ae, m., the father of Aeneas.

Androgeōs, ō, m., a Grecian leader.

Andromachē, ēs, f., wife of Hector.

anguis, is, m., *snake, serpent.*

angustus, a, um, *narrow;* neut. as subst., **angustum**, ī, n., *a narrow place.*

anima, ae, f., *air, wind, blast; breath, life; spirit, shade.*

animal, ālis, n., *a living thing, animal.*

animus, ī, m., *soul, mind, impulse, feeling;* in plur., *courage.*

annus, ī, m., *year; season.*

ante, prep. (acc.), *before;* adv., *before, formerly, sooner;* for **ante . . . quam** see **antequam.**

antequam, conj., *sooner than, before.*

antīquus, a, um, *old, ancient, belonging to ancient times; former.*

aperiō, īre, uī, tum, *lay open, uncover, disclose; show, reveal.*

apertus, a, um, *uncovered, open; clear, cloudless.*

Apollō, inis, m., the god *Apollo.*

appāreō, ēre, uī, *appear.*

aptō, āre, etc., *fit, put on, adjust.*

apud, prep. (acc.), *with, by, near, at, among.*

āra, ae, f., *altar.*

arbor, ŏris, f., *tree.*

arceō, ēre, uī, *enclose, confine; keep at a distance, keep afar.*

ārdēns, entis, *burning, glowing, gleaming; fiery, eager.*

ārdeō, ēre, ārsī, ārsum, *burn, be ablaze; glow, gleam; rage, be eager, long.*

arduus, a, um, *high, lofty, steep;* neut. as subst., **arduum**, ī, n., *a height, a steep.*

Argīvus, a, um, *of Argos, Argive; Grecian;* **Argīvī**, *the Greeks.*

Argolicus, a, um, *of Argos, Argolic; Grecian.*

Argos, n. (only nom. and acc.), also plur., **Argī**, ōrum, m., *Argos*, a city in the Peloponnesus.

ariēs, etis, m., *ram; battering-ram.*

arma, ōrum, n., plur., *arms, weapons, means of attack.*

armentum, ī, n. *cattle for ploughing; herd, drove.*

armiger, gerī, m., *armor-bearer.*

armipotēns, entis, *powerful in arms, warlike.*

armō, āre, etc., *arm, equip.*

arō, āre, etc., *plough.*

arrēctus, a, um, part. of **arrigo**, *erect, rising, lifted up; pricked up, attentive; keen, eager.*

ars, artis, f., *art, skill; artifice, craft, cunning, trick.*

artifex, ficis, m., *craftsman, artist; schemer, plotter, trickster.*

artus, ūs, m., *joint; limb; parts of the body.*

artus, a, um, part. of **arceo**, *confined; close-fitting, tight.*

arvum, ī, n., *field; land, region; shore.* (**arō**.)

arx, arcis, f., *citadel, stronghold; height, summit.* (**arceō**.)

Ascanius, ī, m., the son of Aeneas.

ascendō, ere, scendī, scēnsum, *climb, mount, ascend.*

ascēnsus, ūs, *climbing, ascent.*

Asia, ae, f., *Asia Minor; Asia.*

asper, era, erum, *rough, rugged, thorny; fierce, cruel* (v. 379, **aspris**, abl. plur.).

aspiciō, ere, spexī, spectum, *behold, see.*

ast, conj., another form of **at**.

astrum, ī, n., *a star;* **sub astra**, *to heaven.*

Astyanax, actis, m., the son of Hector.

asylum, ī, n., *place of refuge; sanctuary.*

at or **ast**, conj., *but.*

āter, tra, trum, *black, dark, sad, gloomy.*

atque or **ac**, conj., *and, and also, and further, and in fact;* in comparisons, *as, than.*

Atridēs, ae, m., *a son of Atreus; Menelaus* or *Agamemnon.*

atrium, ī, n., *hall, court.*

attollō, ere, *lift up, raise; build, rear, throw up, heave;* with **se**, *rise.*

attrectō, āre, etc., *touch, handle.*

auctor, ōris, m., *author, instigator, contriver.*

audēns, entis, pres. part. of **audeō**, *bold, fearless.*

audeō, ēre, ausus sum, *dare, venture; be bold* or *daring.*

audiō, īre, īvī, ītum, *hear, listen to.*

augurium, ī, n., *art of divination; omen, sign, foreboding.*

aura, ae, f., *air, breeze; breath; sky, heavens, upper world; gleam, sheen;* **ferre sub aurās**, *bring to light;* **ad aurās**, *up, on high, aloft.*

aurātus, a, um, *gilded, adorned with gold.*

aureus, a, um, *golden.*

auris, is, f., *ear.*

aurum, ī, n., *gold.*

auster, trī, m., *the south wind.*

ausum, ī, n., *attempt, daring deed.*

aut, *or;* **aut . . . aut**, *either . . . or.*

autem, *but, however; also, now, again.*

Automedōn, ontis, m., the charioteer of Achilles.

auxilium, ī, n., *aid, help.*

āvehō, ere, vexī, vectum, *carry away, bear away;* in pass., *sail away; depart.*

āvellō, ere, vellī (vulsī), vulsum, *tear from* or *away.*

āversus, a, um, part. of **āvertō**, *turned away; estranged.*

āvertō, ere, tī, sum, *turn away.*

āvius, a, um, *out of the way, remote, unfrequented;* neut. as subst., **āvium**, ī, n., *an unfrequented place, by-way.*

avus, ī, m., *grandfather, forefather, ancestor.*

axis, is, m., *axle, axis; pole of the heavens, the heavens, sky.*

B

barba, ae, f., *beard.*

barbaricus, a, um, *barbaric, foreign.*

Bēlidēs, ae, m., *son of Belus.*

bellum, ī, n., *war, warfare.*

Bēlus, ī, m., the father of Palamedes.

bigae, ārum, f. plur., *pair of horses, span; (two-horse) chariot.*

bipatēns, entis, *opening two ways; double; wide open.*

bipennis, e, *two-edged;* as subst., **bipennis**, is, f., *battle-axe*

bis, adv., *twice.*

bōs, bovis, m. and f., *bull, bullock, ox.*

bracchium, ī, n., *arm.*

breviter, adv., *briefly.*

brūma, ae, f., *the shortest day in the year, the winter solstice; winter.*

C

cadō, ere, cecidī, cāsum, *fall; set, sink; happen, come to pass.*

caecus, a, um, *blind; aimless; dark, hidden; uncertain.*

caedēs, is, f., *slaughter.*

caedō, ere, cecīdī, caesum, *cut; cut down; slay.*

caelicola, ae, m. and f., *a god.*

caelum, ī, n., *the sky, heavens.*

caeruleus (caerulus), a, um, *dark blue, sea-green, green; dark.*

Calchās, antis, m., a seer or prophet among the Greeks before Troy.

cālīgō, inis, f., *mist, fog; darkness, gloom.*

campus, ī, m., *plain, field.*

canō, ere, cecinī, *sing; foretell.*

capiō, ere, cēpī, captum, *take, seize, capture.*

captīvus, a, um, *captured, plundered;* also as subst., *captive.*

captus, a, um, perf. part. pass. of ^apio; as subt., **captus**, ī, m., or **capta**, ae, f., *a captive, a prisoner.*

caput, itis, n., *the head.*

cardō, inis, m., *hinge.*

careō, ēre, uī, itum, (abl.) *be without, be free from; be deprived of, lack, miss; give up, resign.*

carīna, ae, f., *keel, ship, vessel.*

cārus, a, um, *dear; loving, fond.*

Cassandra, ae, f., a daughter of Priam. See Appendix.

cassus, a, um, *wanting, deprived of*, abl.

cāsus, ūs, m., *fall, downfall, ruin; accident; misfortune.*

caterva, ae, f., *crowd, train, throng.*

catulus, ī, m., *young dog; whelp, cub.*

causa, ae, f., *cause, reason.*

caverna, ae, f., *hollow, cavern, cave.*

cavō, āre, etc., *hollow out, make an opening in.*

cavus, a, um, *hollow; empty, vain.*

cēdō, ere, cessī, cessum, *go, withdraw, depart; give way, yield, submit; fall to, come into possession of.*

celsus, a, um, *lofty, high.*

centum, indecl. num. adj., *hundred.*

cernō, ere, crēvī, crētum, *separate; see, discern, behold.*

certātim, adv., *emulously, eagerly.*

certō, āre, etc., *contend, strive, vie with.*

certus, a, um, *certain, fixed, sure, unfaltering, unerring.*

cervīx, īcis, f., *neck.*

cessō, āre, etc., *stop, cease.*

cēterus, a, um, *the rest of, remaining, other, else.*

ceu, adv. or conj., *as, like; as if.*

cieō, ciēre, cīvī, citum, *move, stir; rouse, excite.*

cingō, ere, cīnxī, cīnctum, *surround, gird, encircle.*

circum, adv. and prep. (acc.), *around, about, near.*

circumdō, dare, dedī, datum, *put or fasten around; surround, encircle.*

circumfundō, ere, fūdī, fūsum, *pour around;* in pass., *surround, encompass, encircle.*

circumfūsus, a, um, part. of **circumfundo**, *surrounding, encircling, gathered round, thronging about.*

circumspiciō, ere, spexī, spectum, *look round upon, survey.*

circumstō, stāre, stetī, *surround, stand around.*

circumvolō, āre, etc., *fly* or *flutter around, hover around.*

cīvis, is, m. and f., *citizen, fellow-citizen.*

clādēs, is, f., *slaughter, havoc, carnage; disaster.*

clāmor, ōris, m., *shout, shouting; cry.*

clangor, ōris, m., *clang, clash, blare; noise, din.*

clārēscō, ere, clāruī, *grow clearer; grow louder.*

clārus, a, um, *bright; clear, loud, distinct; famous, renowned.*

classis, is, f., *fleet, squadron.*

claustra, ōrum, n. plur., *barriers, bars.*

clipeus, ī, m., *shield.*

coepī, isse, coeptus sum, *begin.*

coeptum, ī, n., *undertaking, design, purpose.*

cognōscō, ere, gnōvī, gnitum, *learn.*

cōgō, ere, coēgī, coāctum, *collect, gather, assemble; drive, compel, force.*

colligō, ere, lēgī, lēctum, *bring together, collect, assemble.*

collum, ī, n., *neck.*

coluber, brī, m., *serpent, snake.*

coma, ae, f., *hair, locks, tresses; leaves, foliage.*

comāns, antis, *with long hair; crested, plumed.*

comes, itis, m. and f., *companion, comrade; attendant.*

comitor, ārī, ātus sum, *accompany, attend, follow.*

commendō, āre, etc., *commend, intrust.*

commūnis, e, *common, shared alike.*

compāgēs, is, f., *joint, seam, fastening.*

compellō, āre, etc., *address, accost, speak to.*

complector, ī, plexus, *enfold, embrace.*

compleō, ēre, ēvī, ētum, *fill, fill up.*

compositō, adv., *according to agreement, as was agreed.*

comprehendō (prēndō), ere, prehendī, prehēnsum, *seize, grasp* (with the mind), *comprehend.*

comprimō, ere, pressī, pressum, *check, repress, restrain.*

concēdō, ere, cessī, cessum, *yield; depart, withdraw, retire.*

concidō, ere, cidī, *fall, sink.*

conclāmō, āre, etc., *cry out; shout aloud.*

concrētus, a, um, part. of **concrēsco**, *hardened; matted, clotted.*

concurrō, ere, currī, cursum, *run* or *rush together; engage, fight, clash.*

concutiō, ere, cussī, cussum, *shake.*

condēnsus, a, um, *crowded together.*

condō, ere, didī, ditum, *found, build; hide, conceal.*

cōnfertus, a, um, part. of **confercio**, *crowded together, in close array.*

cōnfīgō, ere, fīxī, fīxum, *pierce.*

cōnfiteor, ērī, fessus, *confess, acknowledge.*

cōnflīgō, ere, flīxī, flīctum, *clash together, contend, struggle.*

cōnfundō, ere, fūdī, fūsum, *mingle; heap together; confuse.*

congemō, ere, uī, *groan deeply, utter a groan.*

congerō, ere, gessī, gestum, *pile up, heap up; build.*

congredior, ī, gressus, *encounter, meet.*

coniciō, ere, jēcī, jectum, *hurl, cast, throw.*

conjugium, ī, n., *union; marriage; husband, wife.*

conjunx, jugis, m. or f., *husband, wife;* also *one's betrothed.*

cōnor, ārī, ātus, *try, attempt.*

cōnsanguineus, a, um, *related by blood;* as subst., *kinsman.*

cōnscius, a, um, *conscious, privy to; confederate; conscious of guilt.*

cōnsequor, ī, secūtus sum, *follow, follow up, pursue.*

cōnserō, ere, seruī, sertum, *fasten;* with proelium, *join, engage in.*

cōnsīdō, ere, sēdī, sessum, *sit down, take one's seat; alight; sink; settle, take up one's abode.*

cōnsilium, ī, n., *plan, purpose, design; counsel.*

cōnsistō, ere, stitī, stitum, *take one's stand, halt, stop.*

cōnspectus, ūs, m., *sight, view.*

cōnsūmō, ere, sūmpsī, sūmptum, *consume, spend.*

contexō, ere, texuī, textum, *weave together; build, frame, construct.*

conticēscō, ere, ticuī, *become silent, be hushed, hold one's peace.*

contineō, ēre, tinuī, tentum, *hold together; restrain, check.*

contingō, ere, tigī, tāctum, *touch; reach; pollute.*

contorqueō, ēre, torsī, tortum, *twist, hurl.*

contrā, adv., *opposite, against; on the other hand; in reply;* **contrā**, prep. (acc.), *opposite, over against; against.*

contrārius, a, um, *opposite.*

convellō, ere, vellī, vulsum, *tear away, tear down, wrench off.*

convertō, ere, vertī, versum, *turn; turn around.*

convolvō, ere, volvī, volūtum, *roll together.*

cōpia, ae, f., *abundance, plenty;* in plur., *forces, troops.*

cōram, adv., *before one's eyes; in person.*

Coroebus, ī, m., a Phrygian, an ally of Priam.

corpus, oris, n., *body.*

corripiō, ere, ripuī, reptum, *seize, snatch.*

coruscus, a, um, *waving, flickering; flashing, sparkling.*

costa, ae, f., *rib; side.*

crātēr, ēris, m., *mixing-bowl.*

crēber, bra, brum, *frequent, numerous.*

crēdō, ere, didī, ditum, *believe, trust, put faith in* (dat.); *suppose, think.*

crēscō, ere, crēvī, crētum, *grow;* **crētus**, *sprung from, descended from.*

Creūsa, ae, f., the wife of Aeneas.

crīmen, minis, n., *charge, accusation.*

crīnis, is, m., *the hair, locks.*

crūdēlis, e, *cruel, pitiless, merciless, ruthless.*

cruentus, a, um, *bloody, blood-stained.*

culmen, minis, n., *top, summit, roof; height, pinnacle.*

culpa, ae, f., *fault, guilt.*

culpō, āre, etc., *blame, hold guilty.*

cum, prep. (abl.), *with.*

cum, conj., *when, since, while, although;* **cum . . . tum**, *both . . . and.*

cumulus, ī, m., *heap, mass, pile.*

cūnctus, a, um, *all, the whole, entire.*

cupīdō, inis, f., *desire, longing, eagerness.*

cupiō, ere, īvī (iī), ītum, *desire, be eager, wish, long.*

cūr, adv., *why?*

cūra, ae, f., *care, anxiety.*

cūrō, āre, etc., *care for, heed.*

currō, ere, cucurrī, cursum, *run.*

cursus, ūs, m., *running, course.*

curvus, a, um, *curved, winding.*

cuspis, idis, f., *spear.*

cūstōs, ōdis, m. and f., *guard, watch, keeper, protector.*

D

Danaus, a, um, *of Danaus,* an ancient king of Argos, hence, *Grecian;* as subst., **Danaī**, ōrum, m. plur., *the Greeks.*

Dardania, ae, f., a poetic name for Troy.

Dardanidēs, ae, m., *a son or descendant of Dardanus; Trojan;* the plur., *Trojans.*

Dardanis, idis, f., *a daughter or descendant of Dardanus.*

Dardanius, a, um, *Dardanian; Trojan.*

Dardanus, ī, m., *Dardanus,* founder of the royal house of Troy.

dē, prep. (abl.) *from, down from; out of; about, concerning.*

dea, ae, f., *goddess.*

dēbeō, ēre, uī, itum, *owe; ought.*

decem, *ten.*

decōrus, a, um, *becoming, fitting; comely, beautiful.*

dēcurrō, ere, currī, cursum, *run down.*

decus, oris, n., *ornament, adornment; grace, beauty; glory, honor.*

dēdūcō, ere, dūxī, ductum, *lead down, launch; conduct.*

dēfendō, ere, fendī, fēnsum, *defend.*

dēfēnsor, ōris, m., *defender.*

dēfessus, a, um, part. of **dēfetiscor**, *worn out, weary, fatigued.*

dēficiō, ere, fēcī, fectum, *fail, be wanting, disappear.*

dēgener, eris, *degenerate, base, ignoble, vulgar.*

deinde (usually pronounced as two syllables, dēinde), adv., *thence, thenceforward; thereupon, then; next, after that.*

Dēiphobus, ī, m., a son of Priam.

dēlābor, ī, lāpsus sum, *fall, slip; glide down.*

dēligō, ere, lēgī, lēctum, *choose, select.*

dē-litēscō, ere, lituī, *hide, lie hidden, lurk.*

dēlūbrum, ī, n., *shrine, temple.*

dēmēns, entis, *out of one's senses, mad.*

dēmentia, ae, f., *madness, folly.*

dēmissus, a, um, part of **dēmittō**, *lowered, hanging down.*

dē-mittō, ere, mīsī, missum, *send down.*

dēmō, ere, dēmpsī, dēmptum, *take away, remove.*

dēmoror, ārī, ātus, *detain, delay, keep waiting.*

dēmum, adv., *at last.*

dēnique, adv., *at last.*

dēnsus, a, um, *close, dense, thick.*

dēpāscō, ere, pāvi, pāstum (also dep.), **dēpascor**, ī, pāstus, *feed upon, devour, consume.*

dēpōnō, ere, posuī, positum, *lay aside, lay down.*

dēscendō, ere, scendī, scēnsum, *go down, descend.*

dēserō, ere, uī, tum, *desert, forsake.*

dēstinō, āre, etc., *destine, set apart, mark out.*

dēsuēscō, ere, suēvī, suētum, *disuse;* perf. part., *disused; unaccustomed.*

dēsum, deesse, dēfuī *be wanting, be lacking; fail.*

dēsuper, adv., *from above; above.*

dētineō, ēre, tinuī, tentum, *keep, detain, hold.*

deus, ī, m., *god, deity.*

dēvolvō, ere, volvī, volūtum, *roll down.*

dexter, era, erum, or tra, trum, *the right, the right hand, on the right; fair, favorable, propitious;* fem., as subst., *the right hand.*

dīcō, ere, dīxī, dictum, *say, speak, tell; call, name.*

dictum, ī, n., *word, speech, command.*

Dīdō, ūs, or ōnis (acc. Dīdō), f., the founder and queen of Carthage.

diēs, ēī, m. (sometimes f. in sing.), *day; an appointed time.*

diffugiō, ere, fūgī, *flee in different directions, scatter, disperse.*

dīgerō, ere, gessī, gestum, *sort, arrange; explain, interpret, expound.*

dignus, a, um, *worthy, deserving.*

digredior, ī, gressus, *go away, depart.*

dīripiō, ere, ripuī, reptum, *tear in pieces, snatch away; plunder.*

dīrus, a, um, *dreadful, awful.*

discēdō, ere, cessī, cessum, *depart, withdraw.*

discō, ere, didicī, *learn.*

discors, cordis, *discordant.*

disiciō, ere, jēcī, jectum, *scatter, disperse; overthrow.*

diū, adv., *for a long time, long.*

dīva, ae, f., *goddess.*

dīvellō, ere, vellī, vulsum, *rend asunder, tear apart, tear away.*

dīversus, a, um, part. of **diverto**, *turned in different directions, apart, asunder; remote; in a different quarter.*

dīves, itis, *rich, wealthy, abounding in* (gen.).

dīvidō, ere, vīsī, vīsum, *divide, distribute.*

dīvīnus, a, um, *divine, sacred.*

dīvus, a, um, *divine, godlike;* as subst., **dīvus**, ī, m., *god;* poetic form of gen., plur. **dīvōm** or **dīvūm**.

dō, dare, dedī, datum, *give, give forth, utter;* with **vela**, etc., *spread* or *set sail.*

Dolopēs, um, m. plur., *Dolopians,* a people of Thessaly.

dolor, ōris, m., *sorrow, pain, grief; resentment, indignation.*

dolus, ī, m., *trick, wile, stratagem, treachery, deceit.*

dominor, ārī, ātus, *lord it over, rule, hold sway.*

domō, āre, uī, itum, *tame, conquer, subdue.*

domus, ūs (loc., **domī**) *house, home.*

dōnec, conj., *as long as, while; till, until.*

dōnum, ī, n., *gift, present; offering.*

Dōricus, a, um, *Doric;* hence, *Grecian, Greek.*

dracō, ōnis, m., *serpent, dragon.*

dubius, a, um, *uncertain, doubtful.*

dūcō, ere, dūxī, ductum, *lead, guide, bring, take; draw, heave; think, deem.*

dūdum, adv., *a while ago, but now, lately.*

dulcis, e, *sweet; dear, beloved.*

dum, conj., *while, as long as; until; provided that.*

dūrus, a, um, *hard, stubborn, hardy, sturdy; harsh, cruel, unfeeling; rough, grievous, severe, difficult.*

dux, ducis, m. and f., *leader, guide, conductor.*

Dymās, antis, m., *Dymas,* a Trojan.

E

ē, prep., see **ex**.
ecce, interj., *lo! behold! see!*
edāx, ācis, *devouring, consuming, wasting.*
ēdisserō, ere, seruī, sertum, *set forth, explain, unfold.*
ēdūcō, ere, dūxī, ductum, *lead out, build up, raise.*
efferō, efferre, extulī, ēlātum, *bring forth; raise.*
effigiēs, ēī, f., *image, likeness, statue.*
effor, ārī, ātus sum, *speak out; say, utter, tell.*
effugiō, ere, fūgī, *flee away, escape.*
effugium, ī, n., *flight, escape.*
effulgeō, ēre, fulsī, *gleam, glitter.*
effundō, ere, fūdī, fūsum, *pour forth; utter.*
effūsus, a, um, part. of **effundō**, *pouring forth, scattered, streaming*; (of hair) *dishevelled.*
egēns, entis, part. of **egeō**, *needy, poor, destitute, in want.*
egeō, ēre, uī, *be in want, have need, require* (abl.).
ēgredior, ī, gressus, *go out, come forth, leave, disembark.*
ēlābor, ī, lāpsus, *slip away, glide forth; elude, dodge.*
ēmicō, āre, micuī, micātum, *spring out, leap up, dart, flash forth.*
ēmoveō, ēre, mōvī, mōtum, *remove, move out.*
enim, conj., *for, indeed.*
ēnsis, is, m., *sword.*
eō, īre, īvī (iī), itum, *go.*
Eōus, a, um, *of the dawn, of the morning; eastern.*
Epēos, ī, m., the builder of the wooden horse.
equidem, adv., *truly, indeed.*
equus, ī, m., *horse, steed.*
ergō, adv., *therefore, then.*
Erinys, yos, f., *a Fury.*
ēripiō, ere, ripuī, reptum, *snatch away, wrest, tear away.*
errō, āre, etc., *wander.*
error, ōris, m., *wandering; error, mistake; deceit.*
ē-rubēscō, ere, rubuī, *redden, blush; respect, revere.*
ēruō, ere, ruī, rutum, *tear up; overturn, overthrow.*
et, conj., *and; also, too, even;* **et** . . . **et**, *both . . . and.*
etiam, conj., *and also, likewise; and even, still, yet.*
etsi, conj., *even if, although.*
Eurus, ī, m., *the southeast* or *east wind.*
Eurypylus, ī, m., one of the Greeks before Troy.
ēvādō, ere, vādī, vāsum, *go forth, come out; mount, ascend.*
ēveniō, īre, vēnī, ventum, *come out; come to pass, happen.*
ēvertō, ere, vertī, versum, *upturn; overturn, overthrow.*
ēvincō, ere, vīcī, victum, *overcome, vanquish.*
ex (or **ē** sometimes before a cons.), prep. (abl.), *out of, from; of; after, since; in accordance with.*
exārdēscō, ere, ārsī, ārsum, *blaze up, be kindled.*
excēdō, ere, cessī, cessum, *depart, withdraw, leave.*

excidium, ī, n., *downfall, destruction.*
excīdō, ere, cīdī, cīsum, *cut out, hew out; destroy.*
excitō, āre, etc., *excite, rouse, stir up.*
exclāmō, āre, etc., *cry out.*
excutiō, ere, cussī, cussum, *shake off, throw off; rouse, wake up.*
exeō, īre, iī (īvī), itum, *go forth.*
exercitus, ūs, m., *army.*
exhālō, āre, etc., *breathe out.*
exigō, ere, ēgī, āctum, *drive forth; pass, spend, fulfil; work out, weigh, ponder.*
exitiālis, e, *deadly, fatal.*
exitium, ī, n., *destruction, ruin.*
exitus, ūs, m., *outlet; issue, event; end, death.*
exoptō, āre, etc., *desire, long for.*
exorior, orīrī, ortus, *rise, arise.*
expediō, īre, īvī (iī), ītum, *extricate; set free.*
expendō, ere, pendī, pēnsum, *weigh out; pay, pay for, expiate.*
experior, īrī, pertus sum, *make trial of, try, test.*
expleō, ēre, ēvī, ētum, *fill up, fill, complete.*
explicō, āre, āvī *and* uī, ātum *and* itum, *unfold, set forth, describe.*
exprōmō, ere, prōmpsī, prōmptum, *bring forth, utter.*
exsanguis, e, *bloodless, pale.*
exscindō, ere, scidī, scissum, *destroy; extirpate.*
exsilium, ī, n., *exile.*
exspectō, āre, etc., *await, wait for.*
ex-stinguō, ere, stinxī, stinctum, *extinguish, blot out, kill, destroy.*
exsultō, āre, etc., *leap up; rejoice, exult.*
exsuperō, āre, etc., *tower above; pass by.*
extemplō, adv., *at once, immediately.*
extrā, prep. (acc.), *outside of, out of, without, beyond.*
extrēmus, a, um, (superl. of **exterus**), *furthest, extreme; last; uttermost, final;* neut. as subst., **extrēma**, ōrum, n. plur., *extremities, the utmost, the worst.*
exuō, ere, uī, ūtum, *put off, lay aside.*
exuviae, ārum, f. plur., anything stripped off, hence, *spoils; cast-off skin, slough.*

F

fabricātor, ōris, m., *contriver, maker.*
fabricō, āre, etc., and depon., **fabricor**, ārī, ātus sum, *build, make, fashion.*
faciēs, ēī, f., *appearance, form, shape, face.*
facilis, e, *easy.*
faciō, ere, fēcī, factum, *do, make, cause.*
factum, ī, n., *deed, act.*
fallō, ere, fefellī, falsum, *deceive; escape the notice of.*
falsus, a, um, part. of **fallō**, *false; groundless.*
fāma, ae, f., *rumor, report, story.*
fās, indecl. n., *divine law; right;* **fās est**, *it is right, lawful.*

fastigium, ī, n., *top, roof, gable, pinnacle, battlement.*
fātālis, e, *fateful; fated, destined.*
fateor, ērī, fassus, *confess.*
fātum, ī, n., *that which is spoken* (**for, fārī**); *prophecy, oracle; fate.*
fātur, see defect. verb, **for.**
faucēs, ium, f. plur., *throat, jaws.*
fax, facis, f., *torch, firebrand; train* or *trail* (of light).
fēmineus, a, um, *of a woman, of women, women's.*
fenestra, ae, f., *window; opening, hole, breach.*
feriō, īre, *strike, smite.*
ferō, ferre, tulī, lātum, *bear, carry; endure, suffer, brook; say, tell; carry off, pl -;* pass., **feror**, often used to -an *move, run, rush.*
ferrum, ī, n., *iron;* something made of iron, *spear-head, axe, sword, steel.*
ferus, a, um, *wild; cruel, savage, fierce;* masc. as subst., **ferus**, ī, m., *wild beast, creature, monster.*
fessus, a, um, *weary.*
festīnō, āre, etc., *hasten.*
fēstus, a, um, *festal, festive.*
fētus, a, um, *pregnant; teeming, laden.*
fictus, a, um, part. of **fingō**, *false, feigned;* neut. as subst., **fictum**, ī, n., *what is false, falsehood.*
fīdēns, entis, part. of **fīdō**, *confident, bold.*
fidēs, eī, f., *faith, trust, honor, fidelity; proof, truth; promise, pledge.*
fīdō, ere, fīsus sum (semi-depon.), *trust, put trust in.*
fīdūcia, ae, f., *confidence, trust.*
fīdus, a, um, *trusty, trustworthy, faithful.*
fīgō, ere, fīxī, fīxum, *fix, fasten, imprint, impress.*
fingō, ere, finxī, fictum, *mould, shape, fashion, make; invent.*
fīnis, is, m. (sometimes f. in sing.), *end, limit, boundary, border;* in plur., *borders, land.*
fīō, fierī, factus sum (pass. of **faciō**), *be made; take place, happen; become.*
firmō, āre, etc., *make strong; reassure, strengthen.*
firmus, a, um, *firm, strong; resolute.*
fīxus, a, um, part. of **fīgō**, *fixed, firm, obstinate.*
flāgitō, āre, etc., *dem- im-portune.*
flagrō, āre, etc., *burn, blaze, glow.*
flamma, ae, f., *flame.*
flectō, ere, flexī, flexum, *bend, turn; guide.*
fleō, flēre, flēvī, flētum, *weep.*
flētus, ūs, m., *weeping, tears.*
fluctus, ūs, m., *wave, billow.*
flūmen, minis, n., *river, stream.*
fluō, ere, fluxī, fluxum, *fl-; ebb.*
foedō, āre, etc., *defile, pollute; mar, disfigure.*
fōns, fontis, m. *spring, fountain.*
(**for**), fārī, fātus, defect. verb, *speak, say.*
fore, forem, from **sum.**
foris, is, f., *door.*
formīdō, inis, f., *dread, fear.*

fors, fortis, f., *chance*; **fors** (sc. **est**) and **forte** as adv., *perhaps, by chance.*
fortis, e, *brave*; *stout, strong.*
fortūna, ae, f., *fortune*; *good fortune, success*; *bad fortune, ill-luck*; *lot, condition.*
frāctus, a, um, part. of **frangō**, *broken, crushed, baffled, discouraged.*
fragor, ōris, m., *crash, din* (**frangō**).
frangō, ere, frēgī, frāctum, *break*; *crush.*
fremitus, ūs, m., *uproar, din, shouting.*
fretum, ī, n., *strait, channel*; *sea.*
frīgidus, a, um, *cold, chill, icy.*
frōns, frondis, f., *leaf, leaves.*
frōns, frontis, f., *forehead, brow.*
frūstrā, adv., *in vain, to no purpose, uselessly.*
frūx, frūgis, f. (generally plur.), (*fruit*) *grain*; *meal.*
fuga, ae, f., *flight.*
fugiō, ere, fūgī, fugitum, *flee, escape, fly.*
fugō, āre, etc., *put to flight, chase away.*
fulgeō, ēre, fulsī, *shine, gleam.*
fulmen, minis, n., *lightning, thunderbolt.*
fulvus, a, um, *yellow, tawny.*
fūmō, āre, *smoke, reek.*
fūmus, ī, m., *smoke, vapor.*
fundāmentum, ī, n., *foundation.*
fundō, ere, fūdī, fūsum, *pour*; *stretch, lay low*; in pass. or with reflex. pron., *pour, swarm, scatter, rush.*
fundus, ī, m., *bottom, depths.*
fūnis, is, m., *rope, cord, cable.*
fūnus, eris, n., *funeral rites*; *death.*
furiō, āre, etc., *madden, infuriate.*
furō, ere, uī, *rage, rave, be furious, be frenzied, be mad*; *be inspired.*
furor, ōris, m., *fury, madness, rage, frenzy.*
fūrtim, adv., *secretly, stealthily, by stealth* (**fūr**, *a thief*).
fūsus, a, um, part. of **fundō**, *spread out, scattered, stretched, extended.*
futūrus, a, um, part. of **sum**, *future, to come, which is to be*; neut. as subst., **futūrum**, ī, n., *what is to come, the future.*

G

galea, ae, f., *helmet.*
gaudeō, ēre, gāvīsus sum (semi-depon.,) *rejoice, be glad, delight in.*
gāza, ae, f., *treasure, riches.*
gelidus, a, um, *icy, cold, chill.*
geminus, a, um, *twin, twofold, two.*
gemitus, ūs, m., *groan, sigh, moan, cry.*
gener, erī, m., *son-in-law.*
genetrix (= **genitrix**), īcis, f., *mother.*
genitor, ōris, m., *father, sire.*
gēns, gentis, f., *race, tribe, nation.*
genus, eris, n., *birth, descent*; *offspring*; *race*; *kind, sort.*
gerō, ere, gessī, gestum, *bear, carry, wear*; *wage.*

glomerō, ā[illegible], etc., *roll up; gather, collect*; in pass., *gather, throng.*
glōria, ae, f., *glory, fame, renown.*
gradus, ūs, m., *step, pace; rung* or *round* (of a ladder).
Grāius, a, um, *Greek, Grecian*; masc. as subst., **Grāius**, ī, *a Greek* (plur., **Graī** or **Graiī**).
grāmen, minis, n., *grass, herb.*
grātēs, ibus, f. plur., *thanks.*
grātus, a, um, *pleasing, acceptable; grateful.*
gravis, e, *heavy.*
graviter, adv., *heavily.*
gravō, āre, etc., *burden, weigh down.*
gressus, ūs, m., *tread; step.*
gurges, itis, m., *whirlpool; waters, flood; sea.*

H

habeō, ēre, uī, itum, *have, hold; deem, consid*[illegible] *regar*[illegible].
haereō, ēre, [illegible] haesum, *cling; linger, be* [illegible] *the spot.*
hasta, ae, f., [illegible] *spear.*
haud, adv., *not, by no means.*
hauriō, īre, hausī, haustum, *drain, drink; drink in, receive.*
hebetō, āre, etc., *make dull.*
Hector, oris, m., the eldest son of Priam, and bravest of the Trojans.
Hectoreus, a, um, *of Hector, Hector's*; hence, generally, *Trojan.*
Hecuba, ae, f., the wife of Priam.
hei, interj., *alas!*
Helena, ae, f., the wife of Menelaus, carried off by Paris to Troy.
Helenus, ī, m., a son of Priam, a soothsayer.
heu, interj., *ah! alas! ah me!*
hic, haec, hōc, *this.*
hīc, adv., *here, hereupon.*
hiems, hiemis, f., *winter; storm, tempest.*
hinc, adv., *hence; from this time, henceforth*; **hinc atque hinc**, *on this side and on that, on each side.*
hodiē, adv., *to-day.*
homō, inis, m. and f., *man*; in plur., *men, mankind, people.*
horrendus, a, um, gerundive of **horreō**, *horrible, dreadful.*
horreō, ēre, uī (*bristle*), *shudder, tremble; shudder at, dread.*
horrēscō, ere, horruī, *begin to shudder; shudder at, dread.*
horror, ōris, m., *horror; dread sound, fearful din.*
hortor, ārī, ātus, *encourage, urge, incite.*
hostia, ae, f., *victim, sacrifice.*
hostis, is, m. and f., *enemy.*
hūc, adv., *to this place, hither.*
humus, ī, f., *earth, ground, soil*; **humī**, locative, *on the ground.*
Hypanis, is, m., a Trojan.

I or J

iaceō, ēre, uī, itum, *lie, am prostrate.*
iactō, āre, etc., *keep throwing; utter wild*[illegible] (freq. fr. **iaciō**).
iaculor, ārī, ātus sum, *fling, hurl* (**iaciō**).
iam, adv., *now, already.*
iamdūdum, adv., *some time since.*

jampridem, adv., *now for a long time.*
jānua, ae, f., *gate, door.*
ibi, adv., *there, then, thereupon.*
ictus, ūs, m., *stroke, blow, thrust.*
Īda, ae, f., a mountain in Phrygia near Troy.
ignārus, a, um, *not knowing, ignorant of, unacquainted with, unaware.*
ignis, is, m., *fire.*
ignōtus, a, um, *unknown.*
īlex, icis, f., *holm-oak, ilex.*
Īliacus, a, um, *of Ilium, Trojan.*
Īlias, adis. f., *Trojan woman.*
īlicet, adv., *at once, straightway.*
Īlium, ī, n., a name of Troy.
Īlius, a, um, *Ilian, Trojan.*
ille, a, ud, *that, yonder, the famous;* as subst., *he, she, it.*
imāgō, inis, f., *likeness, form. image.*
imbellis, e, *unwarlike; powerless.*
immānis, e, *huge, vast; awful; savage.*
immemor, oris, *unmindful, heedless, forgetful.*
immēnsus, a, um, *immeasurable, immense, boundless, vast.*
immisceō, ēre, miscuī, mixtum or mistum, *mingle in* or *with; vanish into* (dat.).
immittō, ere, mīsī, missum, *send into; let in, admit.*
impellō, ere, pulī, pulsum, *drive on, urge.*
imperium, ī, n., *command; authority, power; sovereignty, sway.*
impetus, ūs, m., *attack, violence.*
impius, a, um, *sacrilegious, impious, unholy.*
impleō, plēre, plēvī, plētum, *fill.*
implicō, āre, āvī or uī, ātum or itum, *entwine.*
impōnō, ere, posuī, positum, *place on, put in; place, put, set, set over; lay down, impose.*
improbus, a, um, *malicious, bad, troublesome, insolent;* (of hunger), *ravenous.*
imprōvidus, a, um, *unforeseeing, heedless, blind.*
imprōvīsus, a, um, *unforeseen, unexpected, sudden.*
īmus, a, um, superl. of **īnferus**, *lowest.*
in, prep., 1. (abl.), *in, on;* 2. (acc)., *into; against, toward.*
incendō, ere, cendī, cēnsum, *kindle, burn, set fire to; inflame.*
inceptum, ī, n., *undertaking, attempt, purpose.*
incertus, a, um, *uncertain, wavering.*
incidō, ere, cidī, cāsum, *fall upon, rush upon.*
incīdō, ere, cīdī, cīsum, *cut into.*
incipiō, ere, cēpī, ceptum, *begin, undertake.*
inclēmentia, ae, f., *cruelty, harshness.*
inclūdō, ere, clūsī, clūsum, *shut in, enclose, confine.*
inclutus, a, um, *illustrious, renowned, famous.*
incolumis, e, *unharmed, safe.*
incomitātus, a, um, *unattended.*
incumbō, ere, cubuī, cubitum, *rest* or *lie upon.*
incurrō, ere, currī, cursum, *rush in, charge.*
incūsō, āre, etc., *chide, reproach, upbraid.*

inde, adv., *from that place, thence; then, after that, afterward.*
indicium, ī, n., *evidence, information.*
indignor, ārī, ātus, *be indignant at, chafe; brood over.*
indignus, a, um, *unworthy, undeserved.*
indomitus, a, um, *unsubdued, unbridled, unrestrained.*
indulgeō, ēre, sī, tum, *indulge, indulge in, give way to, yield to* (dat.).
induō, ere, uī, ūtum, *put on;* in pass. reflexively, *put on, don.*
indūtus, a, um, part. of **induō**, *clad, arrayed; wearing.*
inēluctābilis, e, *inevitable.*
inermis, e, *unarmed, defenceless.*
iners, ertis, *sluggish; lifeless; inactive, motionless.*
infandus, a, um, *unspeakable, unutterable; dreadful, accursed, horrible.*
infēlix, īcis, *luckless, ill-boding.*
infēnsus, a, um, *hostile.*
inferus, a, um, *below, underneath;* compar., **inferior**, ius, *inferior, lower, meaner;* superl., **imus**, a, um, *lowest, deepest; the bottom of, the depths of, inmost.*
infēstus, a, um, *hostile, dangerous, deadly.*
infula, ae, f., *fillet;* a white and red band of woollen stuff worn upon the forehead as a sign of consecration.
ingeminō, āre, etc., *redouble, repeat;* also intrans., *be redoubled, increase.*
ingēns, entis, *huge, vast, mighty.*
ingrātus, a, um, *unwelcome, unpleasant.*
ingruō, ere, ī, *rush in upon, burst upon, assail.*
iniciō, ere, jēcī, jectum, *throw, cast, hurl at.*
inimicus, a, um, *hostile, unfriendly; deadly, destructive.*
iniquus, a, um, *unfair, unjust; unfavorable.*
inlābor, ī, lāpsus, *glide into.*
inlūdō, ere, lūsī, lūsum, *mock.*
inmemor, see **immemor.**
inmēnsus, see **immēnsus.**
inmisceō, see **immisceō.**
inmittō, see **immittō.**
innūptus, a, um, *unwedded;* in fem., *maiden, virgin.*
inpōnō, see **impōnō.**
inprōvidus, see **imprōvidus.**
inprōvisus, see **imprōvisus.**
inritus, a, um, *vain, useless.*
inruō, ere, ruī, *rush in.*
inquam, defect. verb, *say.*
insānia, ae, f., *madness.*
insānus, a, um, *mad; inspired.*
inscius, a, um, *not knowing, ignorant, unconscious.*
insequor, ī, secūtus, *follow, pursue.*
insertō, are, etc., *put in, thrust in.*
insidiae, ārum, f. plur., *ambush; stratagem, treachery.*
insigne, is, n., *decoration, device;* in plur., *insignia, trappings, equipments.*
insignis, e, *distinguished, remarkable, conspicuous.*
insinuō, āre, etc., *steal into, creep into.*
insonō, āre, sonuī, *sound, resound.*

īnsōns, sontis, *guiltless, innocent*.
īnspiciō, ere, spexī, spectum, *look into, overlook*.
īnstar, indeclinable, n., *image, likeness*.
īnstaurō, āre, etc., *renew, restore, revive*.
īnsternō, ere, strāvī, strātum, *spread over, cover*.
īnstō, stāre, stitī, stātum, *press on, pursue; be at hand*.
īnstruō, ere, strūxī, strūctum, *arrange, array; build; draw up, set in order; equip*.
īnsula, ae, f., *island*.
īnsultō, āre, etc., *leap upon; exult, be insolent*.
īnsuper, adv., *above, over; moreover, besides*.
integer, gra, grum, *whole, unimpaired, fresh, vigorous*.
intemerātus, a, um, *pure, unstained, unsullied*.
intendō, ere, tendī, tentum or tēnsum, *stretch, spread*.
intentus, a, um, part. of **intendō**, *stretched, strained; straining, eager, intent, attentive*.
inter, prep. (acc.), *between, among*; **inter sē**, *with each other*.
interclūdō, ere, clūsī, clūsum, *cut off, prevent*.
intereā, adv., *meanwhile*.
interior, ius, compar., *interior, inner, within*.
intexō, ere, texuī, textum, *weave in; frame; interlace*.
intimus, a, um, superl. of **interior**, *inmost*.
intorqueō, ēre, torsī, tortum, *hurl*.
intrā, adv. and prep. (acc.), *within*.
intus, adv., *within*.
inultus, a, um, *unavenged*.
inūtilis, e, *useless, unavailing*.
invādō, ere, vāsī, vāsum, *enter; rush upon, attack*.
inveniō, īre, vēnī, ventum, *come upon, find, discover*.
inventor, ōris, m., *deviser, contriver*.
invidia, ae, f., *envy, hatred, ill will*.
invīsus, a, um, part. of **invideō** (*envy*), *hated, hateful*.
involvō, ere, volvī, volūtum, *wrap, enroll*.
Īphitus, ī, m., a Trojan.
ipse, a, um, *self*, (emphatic) *himself, myself, he himself, I myself*, etc.; *the very, even*.
īra, ae, f., *anger, wrath*.
is, ea, id, *he, she, it; that, this, such*.
iste, a, ud, *that* (or *this*) *of yours, he, she*, often with an idea of contempt; *such*.
ita, adv., *thus, so*.
iter, itineris, n., *way, journey, march, road*.
iterum, adv., *again, a second time*.
Ithaca, ae, f., an island in the Ionian sea, the home of Ulysses.
Ithacus, a, um, *of Ithaca, Ithacan*; as subst., **Ithacus**, ī, m., *the Ithacan*, i.e. Ulysses.
Iūlus, ī, m., a name of Ascanius, Aeneas' son.
iuba, ae, f., *mane; crest*.
iubeō, ēre, iussī, iussum, *order, bid, command*.
iugum, ī, n., *yoke; height, mountain ridge*.

jūnctūra, ae, f., *joint.*
jungō, ere, jūnxī, jūnctum, *join, unite.*
jūs, jūris, n., *right, justice, law,*
jussum, ī, n., *order, bidding, command.*
jussus, ūs, m., *order, bidding, command.*
jūstus, a, um, *just, upright, righteous; fair.*
juvenālis, e, *youthful, of youth.*
juvenis, is, m. and f., *a young person, a youth.*
juventa, ae, f., *youth* (in the abstract).
juventūs, tūtis, f., *youth;* collectively, *the youth, the young men.*
juvō, āre, jūvī, jūtum, *aid, assist, help;* impers., **juvat** *it delights.*
juxtā, adv. and prep. (acc.), *near, next, close by, hard by.*

L

lābēs, is, f., *slip, fall, downfall.*
labō, āre, etc., *totter, give way.*
lābor, ī, lāpsus, *slide, slip, glide by.*
labor, ōris, m., *labor, toil, work; struggle; hardship.*
lacrima, ae, f., *tear.*
lacrimō, āre, etc., *weep.*
lacus, ūs, m., *lake, p[illegible]*
laedō, ere, laesī, laesum, *strike, injure, mar, hurt.*
laetus, a, um, *glad, joyous, happy.*
laevus, a, um, *left, on the left hand; unpropitious; infatuated, foolish;* fem. as subst., **laeva** (sc. **manus**), *the left hand.*
lambō, ere, *lick.*
lāmentābilis, e, *lamentable, pitiable; to be regretted.*
lāpsō, āre, etc., *slip.*
lāpsus, ūs, m., *gliding motion, gliding.*
largus, a, um, *copious, abundant.*
Lārissaeus, a, um, *Larissaean, of Larissa,* a town of Thessaly, the supposed abode of Achilles.
lassus, a, um, *wearied, tired.*
lātē, adv., *broadly, widely, far and wide.*
latebra, ae, f. (rare in sing.), *hiding-place, retreat; cavern.*
lateō, ēre, uī, *lie hid, lie concealed, lurk.*
lātus, a, um, *broad, wide.*
latus, eris, n., *side, flank.*
laudō, āre, etc., *praise.*
laurus, ī or ūs, f., *laurel, bay-tree; laurel wreath.*
laus, laudis, f., *praise, glory, renown.*
laxō, āre, etc., *loosen, undo.*
legō, ere, lēgī, lēctum, *gather, collect; choose select, pick, read; skim along, sweep over.*
lēnis, e, *gentle, mild.*
leō, ōnis, m., *lion.*
lētum, ī, n., *death; ruin, destruction.*
levis, e, *light.*
lēvis, e, *smooth; polished.*
levō, āre, etc., *lift up, raise; ease, lighten.*
lēx, lēgis, f., *law.*
lignum, ī, n., *wood.*
ligō, āre, etc., *bind, fasten.*
limbus, ī, m., *border, band.*
līmen, minis, n., *threshold; door; entrance.*

līmes, itis, m., *path, track.*
līmōsus, a, um, *muddy, miry.*
līmus, ī, m., *mud, mire, ooze.*
lingua, ae, f., *tongue; speech.*
linquō, ere, līquī, lictum, *leave.*
lītō, āre, etc., *sacrifice; make atonement.*
lītus, oris, n., *shore.*
locō, āre, etc., *place.*
locus, ī, m., *place, spot, region.*
longaevus, a, um, *aged.*
longē, adv., *far, afar.*
longus, a, um, *long.*
loquor, ī, locūtus, *speak.*
lōrum, ī, n., *thong, strap.*
lūbricus, a, um, *slippery, slimy.*
lūctus, ūs, m., *sorrow, grief, mourning.*
lūgeō, ēre, lūxī, lūctum, *mourn, bewail, lament.*
lūmen, minis, n., *light;* (poetical), *eye.*
lūna, ae, f., *moon; moonlight.*
lupus, ī, m., *wolf.*
lūstrō, āre, etc. (*purify*), *traverse; survey, scan.*
lūx, lūcis, f., *light.*

M

Machāōn, onis, m., a famous surgeon among the Greeks before Troy.
māchina, ae, f., *machine, engine.*
mactō, āre, etc., *offer, sacrifice, slay.*
maestus, a, um, *sad, sorrowful.*
magis, adv., *more, rather.*
māgnus, a, um (**mājor, māximus**), *great, large; loud.*
mājor, compar. of **māgnus**.
male, adv., *badly, ill;* = **nōn** (Eng. prefix un-) giving to adjectives an opposite meaning.
malus, a, um, *evil, bad, wicked; poisonous.*
maneō, ēre, mānsī, mānsum, *remain; await.*
manicae, ārum, f. plur., *manacles, chains* (for the hands).
manifēstus, a, um, *clear, evident, plain.*
manus, ūs, f., *hand; band, troop.*
māter, mātris, f., *mother, matron.*
medius, a, um, *in the middle, the midst, mid.*
melior, ius, compar. of **bonus**, *better.*
melius, adv., *better.*
meminī, isse (perf. with force of pres.), *remember.*
memorābilis, e, *memorable, glorious.*
memorō, āre, etc., *mention, tell, relate, recount.*
mendāx, ācis, *false, deceitful, untruthful.*
Menelāus, ī, m., king of Sparta, husband of Helen, and brother of Agamemnon.
mēns, mentis, f., *mind; thought, design, purpose.*
mēnsa, ae, f., *table.*
mentior, īrī, ītus, *lie, state falsely, pretend.*
mentītus, a, um, part. of **mentior**, *lying.*
mentum, ī, n., *chin.*
mercor, ārī, ātus, *buy, purchase.*
mereō, ēre, uī, itum, also as dep., **mereor**, ērī, itus, *deserve, merit, earn.*
metus, ūs, m., *fear, dread.*

meus a, um, *my.*

micō, āre, uī, *vibrate, quiver, dart; gleam, flash.*

mīles, itis, m., *soldier;* collectively, *soldiery.*

mīlle, *thousand.*

Minerva, ae, f., the goddess of wisdom.

minister, trī, m., *servant, attendant; accomplice.*

minor, ārī, ātus, *threaten, menace; overhang.*

minus, adv., *less.*

mīrābilis, e, *wonderful.*

mīror, ārī, ātus, *wonder at, admire.*

mīrus, a, um, *wonderful.*

misceō, ēre, miscuī, mixtum, *mingle, mix; spread (promiscuously).*

miser, era, erum, *sad, wretched.*

miserābilis, e, *piteous, lamentable, wretched.*

miserandus, a, um, gerundive of **miseror**, *pitiable, lamentable, wretched.*

misereor, ērī, itus, *pity, take pity on* (gen.)

miserēscō, ere, *pity, feel pity, have compassion.*

mittō, ere, mīsī, missum, *send.*

modo, adv., *only, merely, but; but now, a moment ago.*

moenia, ium, n. plur., *walls; a city (within walls).*

mōlēs, is, f., *mass; pile* or *structure; mound; dam; task, work.*

mōlior, īrī, ītus, *labor at, build; undertake.*

mollis, e, *soft, tender.*

moneō, ēre, uī, itum, *warn, advise.*

mōns, montis, m., *mountain, hill.*

mōnstrō, āre, etc., *show.*

mōnstrum, ī, n., *sign, omen, portent; monster.*

montānus, a, um, *of a mountain, mountain.*

mora, ae, f., *delay.*

morior, morī, mortuus, *die, perish.*

moror, ārī, ātus, *delay; detain, keep waiting.*

mors, mortis, f., *death.*

morsus, ūs, m., *bite, biting; fangs.*

mortālis, e, *mortal, human;* masc. as subst., *a mortal.*

moveō, ēre, mōvī, mōtum, *move.*

mucrō, ōnis, m., *point, edge, sword-point.*

mūgītus, ūs, m., *bellowing.*

multus, a, um (**plūs**, **plūrimus**), *much, many.*

mūrus, ī, *wall.*

mūtō, āre, etc., *change, alter; exchange.*

Mycēnae, ārum, f., the city of Agamemnon in Greece.

Myrmidones, um, m. plur., *the Myrmidons,* a Thessalian tribe, ruled by Achilles.

N

nam, namque, conj., *for.*

nārrō, āre, etc., *tell, relate, recount.*

nāscor, ī, nātus, *be born.*

nātus, ī, m., *son, child.*

nāvis, is, f., *ship.*

nē, adv., *no, not;* with **quidem**, *not even.*

nē, conj., *that not, lest.*

-ne, interrog. enclitic, usually a mere sign of interrogation, not translated; in indirect questions, *whether*.
nebula, ae, f., *cloud, mist, fog*.
nec, conj., see **neque**.
nefandus, a, um, *unutterable, impious, accursed, wicked*.
nefās, n., indeclinable, *sin, sacrilege, impiety, what is contrary to divine law*.
negō, are, etc., *say not, deny; refuse*.
Neoptolemus, ī, a name of Pyrrhus, the son of Achilles.
nepōs, ōtis, m., *grandson; descendant*.
Neptūnus, ī, m., *Neptune*, the god of the sea.
neque or **nec**, conj., *and not, nor;* **neque . . . neque**, *neither . . . nor;* **necnōn**, *and also, so too, likewise*.
nēquīquam, adv., *in vain*.
Nēreis, idos, f., *Nereid, daughter of Nereus, sea-nymph*.
Nēreus, eī and eos, m., *a sea-god*.
nesciō, īre, īvī (iī), ītum, *not know, be ignorant of, be unacquainted with;* **nescio quis**, *some or other*.
neu, see **nēve**.
nēve or **neu**, conj., in clause of purpose, *and not, nor;* **nēve . . . nēve**, *neither . . . nor*.
nex, necis, f., *death, murder*.
nī, conj. (= **nisi**), *if not, unless*.
nihil or **nīl**, n., indeclinable, *nothing;* as adv., *not at all*.
nimbus, ī, m., *storm-cloud, cloud*.
nisi, conj., *if not, unless, except*.
nitidus, a, um, *bright, shining*.
nītor, ī, nīsus and nīxus, *rest on, lean upon; struggle, strive; tread hard*.
nōdus, ī, m., *knot; fold, coil*.
nōmen, minis, n., *name; renown*.
nōn, adv., *not*.
noster, tra, trum, *our, ours*.
nōtus, a, um, part. of **nōscō**, *known, well-known*.
Notus, ī, m., *south wind*.
nox, noctis, f., *night; darkness*.
nūbēs, is, f., *cloud*.
nūdus, a, um, *bare, naked*.
nūllus, a, um, *no, none*.
nūmen, minis, n., *divine will, behest; divine presence, divine favor; divinity, deity*.
numerus, ī, m., *number*.
numquam or **nunquam**, adv., *never*.
nunc, adv., *now; but now, as it is*.
nurus, ūs, f., *daughter-in-law*.
nūsquam, adv., *nowhere*.
nūtō, āre, etc, *nod, shake, sway, totter*.

O

Ō, interj., *O! oh! ah!*
ob, prep. (acc.), *on account of*.
obdūcō, ere, dūxī, ductum, *draw over, cover, veil*.
objectō, āre, etc., *expose*.
obiciō, ere, jēcī, jectum, *offer, present*.
oblīvīscor, ī, oblītus, *forget* (gen.).
obruō, ere, ruī, rutum, *bury, overwhelm*.
obscūrus, a, um, *dark, obscure; unseen*.
observō, āre, etc., *watch, observe*.

obsideō, ēre, sēdī, sessum, *besiege, blockade, beset.*

obstipēscō, ere, stipuī, *be astonished, amazed, thunderstruck.*

obtegō, ere, tēxī, tēctum, *cover, conceal, screen.*

obtruncō, āre, etc., *cut down, butcher, slaughter.*

occāsus, ūs, m., *ruin, fall, destruction.*

occidō, ere, cidī, cāsum, *fall, perish, be slain.*

occultō, āre, etc., *hide.*

occumbō, ere, cubuī, cubitum, *fall, die.*

Ōceanus, ī, m., *ocean.*

oculus, ī, m., *eye.*

ōdī, ōdisse, defect. verb, *hate.*

odium, ī, n., *hatred, hate.*

offerō, offerre, obtulī, oblātum, *present, offer, show;* with reflexive or in pass., *appear, meet.*

ōmen, minis, n., *omen, sign.*

omnipotēns, entis, *almighty, omnipotent.*

omnis, e, *all, every, whole.*

onus, eris, n., *burden, weight, load.*

opimus, a, um, *fertile, fruitful; rich.*

oppōnō, ere, posuī, positum, *throw in way; expose.*

(ops), opis, f., *power, ability; help, aid;* in plur., *riches, wealth, resources.*

optātus, a, um, part. of **optō**, *desired, longed for, welcome.*

optō, āre, etc., *wish, desire.*

opus, eris, n., *labor, toil; work.*

ōra, ae, f., *coast; region.*

ōrāculum, ī, n., *oracle.*

orbis, is, m., *ring, circle; coil; world.*

ōrdior, īrī, ōrsus, *begin.*

ōrdō, inis, m., *order; rank.*

orior, īrī, ortus, *rise, spring; be born.*

ornus, i, f., *mountain-ash, ash.*

ōrō, āre, etc., *beg, entreat, beseech, implore.*

ōs, ōris, n., *mouth; face, countenance; voice, speech.*

os, ossis, n., *bone.*

ōsculum, ī, n., *kiss.*

ostendō, ere, tendī, tēnsum and tentum, *show, point out.*

P

Palamēdēs, is, m., king of Euboea, one of the Greeks at Troy.

Palladium, ī, n., *statue of Pallas, Palladium.*

Pallas, adis, f., the Greek goddess of wisdom and war, corresponding to the Roman Minerva.

palma, ae, f., *palm* (of hand), *hand.*

palūs, ūdis, f., *marsh, pool.*

pandō, ere, pandī, pānsum or passum, *spread, spread out; throw open;* **passis crinibus**, *with dishevelled hair.*

Panthūs, ī, m., a Trojan priest.

pār, paris, *equal, well-matched.*

parcō, ere, pepercī, parcitum (parsum), *spare; refrain from, forbear.*

parēns, entis, m. and f., *parent, father, mother.*

pāreō, ēre, uī, itum, *obey* (dat.).

pariēs, etis, m., *wall (of a house).*

pariō, ere, peperī, partum, *bring forth, bear; gain, win, secure.*

Paris, idis, m., a son of Priam, and the cause of the Trojan war.
pariter, adv., *equally; together.*
parma, ae, f., *shield.*
parō, āre, etc., *prepare, make ready.*
pars, partis, f., *part;* **pars . . . pars**, *some . . . others.*
partiō, īre, īvī (iī), ītum, also dep., *share; divide.*
parvus, a, um, *small, little.*
pāscō, ere, pāvī, pāstum, *feed; feed on.*
passim, adv., *everywhere.*
passus, a, um, part. of **pandō**, *dishevelled, flowing; disordered, outspread.*
passus, ūs, m., *step, pace.*
pāstor, ōris, m., *shepherd.*
patefaciō, ere, fēcī, factum, *open, throw open.*
patēns, entis, part. of **pateō**, *open.*
pateō, ēre, uī, *be open, lie open.*
pater, tris, m., *father.*
patēscō, ere, patuī, incep. verb, *begin, to be open, become obvious.*
patiēns, entis, part. of **patior**, *submissive, patient, tame.*
patior, patī, passus, *suffer, endure, bear; allow, permit, brook.*
patria, ae, f., *father-land, native country, home.*
patrius, a, um, *of a father, paternal, ancestral; of one's country, native.*
paulātim, adv., *gradually.*
pauper, eris, *poor.*
pavidus, a, um, *trembling, frightened.*
pavitō, āre, etc., *tremble.*
pavor, ōris, m., *dread, fear.*
pectus, oris, n., *breast; heart.*
pelagus, ī, n., *sea.*
Peliās, ae, m., a Trojan.
Pēlīdēs, ae, m., *son or descendant of Peleus,* i.e. Achilles or Pyrrhus.
pellāx, ācis, *crafty, artful, subtle.*
pellis, is, f., *hide, skin.*
pellō, ere, pepulī, pulsum, *drive, drive out, banish.*
Pelopēus, a, um, *Pelopean, of Pelops,* once the chief ruler of the southern part of Greece, which was called after him the Peloponnesus.
Penātēs, ium, m. plur., *the Penates, the household gods.*
pendeō, ēre, pependī, *hang.*
penetrālis, e, *inner, inmost;* n. plur. as subst., **penetrālia**, ium, *inner apartments, secret chambers; shrine, sanctuary.*
penitus, adv., *far within; far away; wholly, utterly.*
per, prep. (acc.), *through, throughout, during; by means of, on account of;* in oaths or appeals, *by.*
pereō, īre, iī (īvī), itum, *be destroyed, perish, die.*
pererrō, āre, etc., *wander* or *roam over.*
perfundō, ere, fūdī, fūsum, *bespatter.*
Pergamum, ī, n. and f., **Pergama**, ōrum, n. plur., *the citadel of Troy; Troy.*
periculum (contracted to **periclum**), ī, n., *danger, peril, risk.*
Periphās, antis, m., a Greek warrior.
perjūrus, a, um, *perjured, false.*
perrumpō, ere, rūpī, ruptum, *break through.*

persolvō, ere, solvī, solūtum, *pay.*

perstō, āre, stitī, stātum, *persist, continue.*

perveniō, īre, vēnī, ventum, *come, reach.*

pervius, a, um, *affording a passage, making a thoroughfare.*

pēs, pedis, m., *foot.*

petō, ere, īvī (iī), ītum, *seek.*

phalanx, angis, f., *phalanx, band of soldiers, force, fleet.*

Phoebus, ī, m., a name of Apollo the Sun-god.

Phryges, um, m. plur., *the Phrygians;* generally, *the Trojans.*

Phrygius, a, um, *Phrygian; Trojan.*

Phthīa, ae, f., the home of Achilles, in Thessaly.

pietās, tātis, f., *dutiful conduct, filial love; reverence, piety, affection.*

pīneus, a, um, *of pine.*

pīnus, ūs and ī, f., *pine, pine-tree, fir;* anything made of pine, *ship.*

piō, āre, etc., *expiate, atone for; appease.*

placeō, ēre, uī, itum, *be pleasing;* impersonal, **placet**, *it is one's pleasure, seems best.*

plācō, āre, etc., *calm, soothe, appease.*

plangor, ōris, m., *cry, wailing.*

plūrimus, a, um, superl. of **multus**.

plūs, plūris, compar. of **multus**.

poena, ae, f., *punishment, penalty, vengeance.*

pōnē, adv., *behind.*

pōnō, ere, posuī, positum, *put, place; lay aside, cast aside.*

pontus, ī, m., *sea.*

populus, ī, m., *people, tribe, race, nation.*

porta, ae, f., *gate, passage.*

porticus, ūs, f., *colonnade, gallery.*

portō, āre, etc., *carry, bear, bring.*

pōscō, ere, popōscī, *ask, demand.*

possum, posse, potuī, *be able, can.*

post, adv., *behind; after, afterwards;* prep. (acc.), *behind; after.*

postis, is, m., *door-post; door.*

potēns, entis, *mighty, powerful.*

praeceps, cipitis, *headlong; in haste;* neut. as subst., *brink, edge.*

praeceptum, ī, n., *precept, instruction, charge, warning.*

praecipitō, āre, etc., *hurl headlong.*

praecipuē, adv., *especially.*

praecordia, ōrum, n. plur., *breast, heart.*

praeda, ae, f. *booty, spoil, plunder; prey.*

praemetuō, ere, *fear in advance, fear.*

praemium, ī, n., *reward, prize, recompense.*

precēs (plur. of a defective noun **prex** of which only a few forms in the sing. are found), *prayer, entreaty.*

prehendō, ere, hendī, hēnsum (contracted to **prēndō**), *seize, grasp, occupy.*

prehēnsō, āre, etc. (contracted to **prēnsō**), *grasp at, lay hold of, clutch.*

premō, ere, pressī, pressum, *press; tread upon.*

prēndō, see **prehendō**.
pretium, ī, n., *price, value; bribe; reward.*
Priamēius, a, um, *of Priam.*
Priamus, ī, m., *Priam*, king of Troy.
primum, adv., *first, at first.*
primus, a, um, superl. of **prior**, *first, foremost, earliest; chief, highest;* **in primis**, *especially, chiefly.*
principium, ī, n., *beginning;* abl. as adv., **principiō**, *in the first place.*
prius, adv., *before, sooner.*
prō, prep. (abl.), *before, for; instead of.*
prōcēdō, ere, cessī, cessum, *go forward, proceed, advance.*
procul, adv., *at a distance, far off, afar.*
prōcumbō, ere, cubuī, cubitum, *bend forward; fall, fall slain, be prostrate.*
prōditiō, ōnis, f., *treason; treacherous charge.*
prōdō, ere, didī, ditum, *put forth; betray.*
prōdūcō, ere, dūxī, ductum, *lead forth; prolong.*
proelium, ī, n., *battle.*
prōlābor, ī, lāpsus sum, *sink, fall, fall to ruin.*
prōmissum, ī, n., *promise.*
prōmittō, ere, mīsī, missum, *promise; vow.*
prōmō, ere, prōmpsī, prōmptum, *bring forth;* with **sē**, *come forth, issue forth.*
propinquō, āre, etc., *approach, draw near.*
propinquus, a, um, *near, nigh, at hand; akin, related;* as subst., *kinsman.*
propior, ius, compar., *nearer.*
propius, compar. adv., *nearer.*
prōsequor, ī, secūtus sum, *attend, follow after, accompany; proceed.*
prōspiciō, ere, spexī, spectum, *look out, look forth.*
prōtegō, ere, tēxī, tēctum, *cover, protect.*
prōtinus, adv., *forthwith, immediately.*
prōtrahō, ere, trāxī, trāctum, *drag forth.*
prōvehō, ere, vexī, vectum, *bear forward;* in pass., *sail.*
proximus, a, um, superl. of **propior**, *nearest, next.*
pūbēs, is, f., *youth, young men.*
puella, ae, f., *girl, maiden.*
puer, erī, m., *child, boy.*
pugna, ae, f., *battle, fight.*
pulcher, chra, chrum, *fair, beautiful.*
pulvis, eris, m., *dust.*
puppis, is, f., *stern;* generally, *ship, vessel.*
pūrus, a, um, *clean, pure, clear.*
putō, āre, etc., *think, suppose; ponder, consider.*
Pyrrhus, ī, m., the son of Achilles; see Appendix.

Q

quā, adv. rel., *where, as;* indef., *in any way.*
quaerō (old form **quaesō**), ere, quaesīvī (quaesiī), quaesītum, *seek, search for; ask, beg.*

quālis, e, rel., *of which kind, such as, as, like*; interrog., *of what sort.*
quamquam, conj., *although, though; and yet.*
quandō, adv., *at any time, ever*; conj., *since, because.*
quantus, a, um, rel., *as great, as much as*; interrog., *how great, how much.*
quater, adv., *four times.*
quatiō, ere, quassum, *shake.*
-que, conj., enclitic, *and*; **-que** . . . **-que**, *both . . . and.*
quī, quae, quod, rel. pron., *who, which, what, that*; interrog. adj., *which? what?* indef. adj. (after **nē** and **sī**), *any.*
quia, conj., *because.*
quicumque, quaecumque, quodcumque, *whoever, whatever.*
quidem, adv., *truly, indeed*; **nē** . . . **quidem**, *not even.*
quiēs, ētis, f., *rest, quiet.*
quin, conj., *that not, but that*; adv., *nay, nay more.*
quīnī, ae, a, *five each*; as a multiplicand, *five.*
quinquāgintā, *fifty.*
quis, quae, quid, interrog. pron., *who? what?* neut. as adv., **quid**, *why? how? what of?* indef. pron., *any one, anything, any.*
quisnam, quaenam, quidnam, *who, pray? what, pray?*
quisquam, quaequam, quidquam *or* quicquam, *any one, anything.*
quisque, quaeque, quodque, and as subst., **quidque** or **quicque**, *each, every, all.*
quisquis, quidquid *or* quicquid, *whoever, whatever.*
quō, inter. and rel. adv., *whither, where, to what end, wherefore.*
quod, conj., *that, because; in that, as to the fact that*; **quod sī**, *but if*; in II, 141, trans. *but*, or *wherefore* (really *as to which*).
quōnam, adv., *whither, pray?*
quondam, adv., *once, formerly; at times, sometimes; some day, ever.*
quoque, conj., *also, too.*
quot, adj., indecl., *how many? as many as.*

R

rabiēs, em, ē, f., *rage, fury; madness*; **rabiēs ventris** (rage of the belly), *mad hunger.*
rapidus, a, um, *swift, quick, rapid, flying; consuming, fierce.*
rapiō, ere, rapuī, raptum, *seize, carry off, hurry away, snatch up; scour.*
raptō, āre, etc., *drag violently.*
raptor, ōris, m., *plunderer*; as adj., *plundering, ravening.*
ratiō, ōnis, f., *manner, way, plan; reason, counsel, sense.*
raucus, a, um, *hoarse, deep sounding.*
recēdō, ere, cessī, cessum, *retire, withdraw; stand back, be retired.*
recēns, entis, *fresh, recent, new.*
recipiō, ere, cēpī, ceptum, *take back, recover.*
recondō, ere, didī, ditum, *hide, conceal, bury.*
recūsō, āre, etc., *refuse, object, be reluctant; recoil, shrink back.*
recutiō, ere, cussum, *strike again,*

cause to resound; in pass., *re-echo*.
reddō, ere, didī, ditum, *give back, restore*.
redeō, īre, iī (īvī), itum, *go back, come again, return*.
reditus, ūs, m., *return*.
redūcō, ere, dūxī, ductum, *bring back, restore*.
referō, referre, rettulī, relātum, *bring back*.
reflectō, ere, flexī, flexum, *bend back*.
refugiō, ere, fūgī, *flee back, shrink, recoil*.
refulgeō, ēre, fulsī, *shine*.
rēgīna, ae, f., *queen*.
regiō, ōnis, f., *region, district*.
rēgius, a, um, *royal*.
rēgnātor, ōris, m., *ruler, lord*.
rēgnum, ī, n., *kingship, sovereignty*.
rēligiō, ōnis, f., *reverence, awe; worship, religion; divinity; sacred protection*.
rēligiōsus, a, um, *holy, sacred*.
relinquō, ere, līquī, lictum, *leave behind, leave, forsake, abandon*.
relūceō, ēre, lūxī, *shine, gleam*.
remeō, āre, etc., *return*.
remētior, īrī, mēnsus, *remeasure, retrace, traverse again*.
remittō, ere, mīsī, missum, *send back*.
renovō, āre, etc., *renew, revive*.
reor (rērī), ratus, *think*.
repellō, ere, reppulī, repulsum, *drive back*.
rependō, ere, pendī, pēnsum, *repay*.
repente, adv., *suddenly*.
reperiō, īre, repperī, repertum, *find, find out, discover*.
repetō, ere, īvī (iī), ītum, *seek again*.
repleō, ēre, ēvī, ētum, *fill*.
reportō, āre, etc., *bring back, report*.
repōscō, ere, *demand, claim in return*.
reprimō, ere, pressī, pressum, *check, restrain*.
requiēscō, ere, quiēvī, quiētum, *rest*.
requīrō, ere, quīsīvī (iī), quīsītum, *seek; ask*.
rēs, reī, f., *thing, affair, matter*.
resideō, ēre, sēdī, sessum, *sink down, stay behind*.
resistō, ere, stitī, *resist*.
resolvō, ere, solvī, solūtum, *set free, release; relax*.
respiciō, ere, spexī, spectum, *look back for; notice, regard*.
respondeō, ēre, spondī, spōnsum, *answer, respond*.
respōnsum, ī, n., *answer, reply, response*.
restinguō, ere, stīnxī, stinctum, *quench, extinguish*.
restō, āre, stitī, *be left, remain*.
retrō, adv., *backwards, back*.
retrōversus (contracted to **retrōrsus**), adv., *back, again*.
revertor, ī, versus, *return*.
revinciō, īre, vīnxī, vīnctum, *bind back, bind*.
revīsō, ere, *return to, revisit*.
revolvō, ere, volvī, volūtum, *roll back* (as of a scroll); *repeat, unfold*.
rēx, rēgis, m., *king*.
Rhīpeus, ī, m., *Rhipeus*, a Trojan.

Rhoetēus, a, um, *of Rhoeteum*, a promontory near Troy; hence generally, *Trojan.*
rōbur, oris, n., *oak; strength, power, vigor.*
rogō, āre, etc., *ask.*
roseus, a, um, *of roses; rosy, roseate, rose-colored.*
rota, ae, f., *wheel.*
ruina, ae, f., *fall, downfall, ruin.*
ruō, ere, ruī, rutum, *fall, rush down, fall in ruins.*
rūrsus, adv., *back; again.*

S

sacer, cra, crum, *sacred, holy;* neut. as subst., **sacrum**, ī, n., chiefly in plur., *sacred rites; sacred hymns.*
sacerdōs, ōtis, m., *priest.*
sacrātus, a, um, part. of **sacrō**, *sacred, holy, consecrated.*
sacrō, āre, etc., *consecrate, dedicate.*
saepe, adv., *often, oft.*
saeviō, īre, iī (īvī), ītum, *rage.*
saevus, a, um, *raging, furious, savage, fierce.*
salsus, a, um, *salted, briny.*
saltus, ūs, m., *leap, bound.*
salum, ī, n., *the brine, the sea, the deep.*
salūs, ūtis, f., *safety, welfare.*
sanctus, a, um, part. of **sanciō**, *sacred, holy; reverend.*
sanguineus, a, um, *bloody, blood-red.*
sanguis, inis, m., *blood.*
saniēs, ēī, f., *foul matter, gore.*
sat, see **satis**.
sata, ōrum, n. plur., part. of **serō**, *(sown things) crops.*
satiō, āre, etc., *satisfy.*
satis (also **sat**), *enough.*
saucius, a, um, *wounded.*
saxum, ī, n., *rock, stone.*
scālae, ārum, f. plur., *ladder, scaling ladders.*
scandō, ere, *climb, mount, ascend.*
scelerātus, a, um, part. of **scelerō**, *guilty; impious, wicked.*
scelerō, āre, etc., *pollute, defile.*
scelus, eris, n., *crime, deed; guilt.*
scīlicet, adv., *doubtless, forsooth.*
scindō, ere, scidī, scissum, *split, cleave, rend, tear.*
scītor, ārī, ātus, *ask, inquire.*
secō, āre, secuī, sectum, *cut.*
sēcrētus, a, um, part. of **sēcernō**, *retired, apart, remote, hidden.*
secundus, a, um, *following; favoring, prosperous, propitious.*
secūris, is, f., *axe.*
secus, adv., *otherwise;* **haud secus**, *even thus, just so.*
sed, conj., *but.*
sedeō, ēre, sēdī, sessum, *sit; encamp; be fixed.*
sēdēs, is, f., *seat, abode, dwelling, temple, foundation.*
seges, etis, f., *corn-field; standing corn, crop.*
sēgnitiēs, ēī, f., *slowness, tardiness.*
semper, adv., *always, ever.*
senex, senis, compar. **senior**, *old;* as subst., *old man.*
sententia, ae, f., *opinion, judgment, view; purpose.*
sentiō, īre, sēnsī, sēnsum, *perceive, feel; understand, know.*
sentis, is, m., *brier, bramble.*

sepeliō, īre, īvī, sepultum, *bury*.
septem, *seven*.
sepulcrum, ī, n., *tomb*, *grave*.
sequor, ī, secūtus, *follow*.
serēnus, a, um, *clear*, *cloudless*; *serene*, *calm*.
serō, ere, sēvī, satum, *sow*.
serō, ere, (seruī), sertum, *join*.
serpēns, entis, m. and f., *serpent*, *snake*.
serpō, ere, serpsī, serptum, *creep*; *steal upon*.
sērus, a, um, *late*.
servāns, antis, part. of **servō**, *observant*.
serviō, īre, īvī, ītum, *be a slave*, *serve* (dat.).
servō, āre, etc., *watch over*, *save*, *preserve*, *keep*, *guard*; *observe*.
seu, conj., see **sīve**.
sī, conj., *if*.
sībilus, a, um, *hissing*.
sīc, adv., *thus*, *so*.
siccus, a, um, *dry*; *parched*.
sīdus, eris, n., *star*, *constellation*.
Sigēus, a, um, *of Sigeum*, a promontory near Troy.
signō, āre, etc., *mark*, *notice*; *mark out*, *designate*.
signum, ī, n., *mark*, *signal*, *sign*.
silentium, ī, n., *silence*.
sileō, ēre, uī, *be silent*, *calm*, *still*.
silva, ae, f., *wood*, *forest*.
similis, e, *like*.
simul, adv., *at the same time*, *together*; **simul āc**, *as soon as*.
simulācrum, ī, n., *image*; *phantom*.
simulō, āre, etc., *imitate*; *pretend*, *feign*.
sin, conj., *but if*.
sine, prep. (abl.), *without*.
sinister, tra, trum, *left*; fem. as subst. **sinistra** (sc. **manus**), *the left hand*.
sinō, ere, sīvī, situm, *permit*, *let*, *allow*.
Sinōn, ōnis, m., a Greek who induced the Trojans to admit the wooden horse.
sinuō, āre, etc., *bend in curves*, *wind*, *wreathe*.
sinus, ūs, m., *fold* (of a garment); *bosom*; *curve*; *gulf*, *bay*.
sistō, ere, stitī, statum, *set*, *place*.
sīve or **seu**, conj., *or*, *or if*; **sīve** (**seu**) . . . **sīve** (**seu**), *whether . . . or*, *either . . . or*.
socer, erī, m., *father-in-law*; plur., *parents-in-law*.
socius, ī, m., *companion*, *comrade*, *ally*.
socius, a, um, *allied*, *confederate*.
sōl, sōlis, m., *sun*.
soleō, ēre, solitus sum, *be wont*, *be accustomed*.
solidus, a, um, *solid*, *whole*.
sollemnis, e, *annual*, *appointed*; *accustomed*, *wonted*.
solum, ī, n., *ground*, *earth*, *land*, *soil*; *surface* (of the sea).
solvō, ere, solvī, solūtum, *loosen*.
somnium, ī, n., *dream*.
somnus, ī, m., *sleep*, *slumber*.
sonitus, ūs, m., *sound*.
sonō, āre, uī, itum, *sound*.
sonus, ī, m., *sound*.
sopor, ōris, m., *deep sleep*, *slumber*.
sors, sortis, f., *lot*; *fate*.
sortior, īrī, ītus, *draw lots*; *choose* (*by lot*).
spargō, ere, sparsī, sparsum, *scatter*; *spread abroad*.

speciēs, ēī, f., *sight; appearance.*
spērō, āre, etc., *hope, expect.*
spēs, eī, f., *hope, expectation.*
spīra, ae, f., *fold, coil.*
spissus, a, um, *thick, dense; hard.*
spolium, ī, n., *booty, plunder, spoil.*
spōnsa, ae, f., *one's betrothed, bride.*
spūmeus, a, um, *foaming.*
spūmō, āre, etc., *foam, froth.*
squāleō, ēre, uī, *be rough, unsightly, unkempt, squalid.*
squāmeus, a, um, *scaly* (**squāma**).
stabulum, ī, n., *stall.*
statiō, ōnis, f., *resting place; anchorage.*
statuō, ere, uī, ūtum, *set up; build.*
stella, ae, f., *star.*
sternō, ere, strāvī, strātum, *stretch out; lay low.*
Sthenelus, ī, m., the charioteer of Diomedes.
stō, stāre, stetī, statum, *stand; stand firm.*
strātum, ī, n., *pavement.*
strīdō, ere, strīdī, *creak, grate.*
stringō, ere, strinxī, strictum, (*draw tight*); (of a sword), *draw, unsheath.*
struō, ere, strūxī, strūctum, *pile up; build; accomplish.*
studium, ī, n., *eagerness, zeal.*
stupeō, ēre, uī, *be astonished, be amazed.*
stuppeus, a, um, *hempen* (**stuppa**).
suādeō, ēre, suāsī, suāsum, *advise, urge* (dat. of person).
sub, prep. (1) (abl.), *under;* (2) (acc.), (*to*) *beneath; toward.*
subeō, īre, iī, itum, *go under; enter, approach.*
subiciō, ere, jēcī, jectum, *place under.*
subitō, adv., *suddenly.*
subitus, a, um, part. of **subeō**, *sudden, unexpected.*
sublābor, ī, lāpsus, *fall back, slip away.*
subsistō, ere, stitī, *stop, halt.*
succēdō, ere, cessī, cessum, *enter; go up to, climb to* (dat.).
successus, ūs, m., *success.*
succurrō, ere, currī, cursum, *aid, help, succor; occur* (to the mind).
sūdō, āre, etc., *sweat.*
sūdor, ōris, m., *sweat.*
sufferō, sufferre, sustulī, sublātum, *endure, hold out.*
sufficiō, ere, fēcī, fectum, *suffuse; supply.*
sulcus, ī, m., *furrow; track.*
sulpur, uris, n., *sulphur.*
sum, esse, fuī, *be, exist, belong.*
summus, a, um (superl. of **superus**), *highest, top of, summit of.*
sūmō, ere, sūmpsī, sūmptum, *take;* with **poenās**, *inflict.*
super, adv., *above; further, besides;* prep. (acc.), *over, above, beyond;* (abl.), *on, upon; concerning.*
superbus, a, um, *proud.*
superō, āre, etc., *surmount; tower above, overtop; overcome.*
supersum, esse, fuī, *be left, remain, survive.*
superus, a, um (compar., **superior**, superl., **suprēmus** or **summus**), *upper, higher, above;*

masc. plur. as subst., **superī**, ōrum, *the gods above.*
supplex, icis, *suppliant, humble;* as subst., *a suppliant.*
surgō, ere, surrēxī, surrēctum, *arise, rise.*
suscitō, āre, etc., *stir up, arouse, excite, inflame.*
suspectus, a, um, part. of **suspiciō**, *suspected, mistrusted.*
suspēnsus, a, um, part. of **suspendō**, *in suspense, perplexed.*
suus, a, um, *his, hers, its, theirs; one's own, one's proper.*

T

tabulātum, ī, n., *floor, story.*
taceō, ēre, uī, itum, *be silent, be still.*
tacitus, a, um, part. of **taceō**, *silent, quiet.*
tāctus, ūs, m., *touch.*
tālis, e, *such, of such a kind.*
tam, adv., *so.*
tamen, conj., *yet, still.*
tandem, adv., *at last;* in earnest questions of appeal, *pray, I pray.*
tantus, a, um, *so great, so much, such;* adv., **tantum**, *just so much; only, merely.*
tardus, a, um, *slow, sluggish.*
taurus, ī, m., *bull, ox.*
tēctum, ī, n., *roof; house, dwelling, home.*
tegō, ere, tēxī, tēctum, *cover, shelter; shut up, hide, conceal.*
tellūs, ūris, f., *earth, land.*
tēlum, ī, n., *missile, dart, weapon.*
temperō, āre, etc., *refrain.*
tempestās, tātis, f., *season; weather; storm.*
templum, ī, n., *temple.*
temptō (also **tentō**), āre, etc., *try, test, examine.*
tempus, oris, n., *time;* in plur., *temples* (of the head).
tenāx, ācis, *persistent, obstinate.*
tendō, ere, tetendī, tentum and tēnsum, *stretch; pitch a tent; direct.*
tenebrae, ārum, f. plur., *darkness, gloom.*
Tenedos, ī, f., an island near Troy.
teneō, ēre, tenuī, tentum, *hold.*
tener, era, erum, *tender.*
tentō, see **temptō**.
tenuis, e, *thin, fine, slender.*
tenus, prep. (abl.), *as far as, up to* (put after its case).
ter, adv., *thrice, three times.*
terebrō, āre, etc., *bore into, pierce.*
tergum, ī, n., *back.*
terra, ae, f., *earth, land.*
terreō, ēre, uī, itum, *terrify.*
testor, ārī, ātus, *bear witness; call to witness.*
testūdō, inis, f., *a tortoise-shell; testudo* or *roof made of shields overlapping.*
Teucrī, ōrum, m. plur., *the Teucri* or *descendants of Teucer, the Trojans.*
Teucria, ae, f., *the Teucrian land, Troy.*
texō, ere, texuī, textum, *weave.*
thalamus, ī, m., *chamber, bridal-chamber.*
Thessandrus, ī, m., a Greek warrior.
Thetis, idis, f., a sea-nymph, and mother of Achilles.

Thoās, antis, m., a Greek warrior.
Thymoetēs, ae, m., a Trojan.
timeō, ēre, uī, *fear.*
tollō, ere, sustulī, sublātum, *lift, raise; take away.*
torrēns, entis, m., *torrent.*
torus, ī, m., *cushion, couch.*
tot, indecl., *so many.*
totiēns, adv., *so often, as often.*
tōtus, a, um, *all, the whole.*
trabs, trabis, f., *beam.*
trahō, ere, trāxī, trāctum, *draw; drag.*
trāiciō, ere, jēcī, jectum (*throw across*), *pierce.*
tranquillus, a, um, *quiet, calm.*
trānsferō, ferre, tulī, lātum, *transfer, carry across.*
tremefaciō, ere, fēcī, factum, *cause to tremble.*
tremefactus, a, um, part. of **tremefaciō**, *shaking, trembling, quaking.*
tremendus, a, um, gerundive of **tremō**, *dreadful, awful.*
tremō, ere, uī, *tremble.*
tremor, ōris, m., *trembling.*
trepidō, āre, etc., *be in alarm, tremble, flutter; hasten.*
trepidus, a, um, *alarmed, agitated.*
tridēns, entis, *three-pronged, triple-pointed;* masc. as subst., *trident.*
trīstis, e, *sad, gloomy, deadly, dreadful; fell.*
trisulcus, a, um, *triple-cloven, three-forked.*
Trītōnia, ae, f., *the Tritonian, Minerva*, a name said to be based upon the belief that she was born near Lake Tritonis in Africa.
Trītōnis, idis, f., *the Tritonian, Minerva.*
triumphus, ī, m., *triumph.*
Trōas, adis, f., *Trojan woman.*
Trōja, ae, f., *Troy.*
Trōjānus, a, um, *Trojan, of Troy.*
trucīdō, āre, etc., *slaughter, butcher* (**taurus**, **caedō**).
tueor, ērī, itus (**tūtus**), *look at, gaze at; guard, defend.*
tum, adv., *then, at that time.*
tumeō, ēre, *swell, be swollen.*
tumidus, a, um, *swollen, swelling.*
tumultus, ūs, m., *tumult, uproar, uprising.*
tumulus, ī, m., *mound; tomb.*
turba, ae, f., *confusion; throng, crowd, herd.*
turbō, āre, etc., *disturb, agitate, confuse.*
turbō, inis, m., *whirlwind.*
turpis, e, *base, disgraceful.*
turris, is, f., *tower, turret.*
tūtor, ārī, ātus, *protect, defend.*
tūtus, a, um, part. of **tueor**, *safe.*
tuus, a, um, *thy, thine.*
Tȳdeus, eī and eos, m., a famous Greek warrior, father of Diomede.
Tȳdīdēs, ae, m., *son of Tydeus, Diomede.*

U

ubi, rel. adv., *where, when;* interrog., *where?*
ubique, adv., *everywhere.*
Ūcalegōn, ontis, m., a Trojan.
ulcīscor, ī, ultus, *avenge.*

Ulixēs, is (eī or ī), m., *Ulysses*, king of Ithaca, one of the leading Greeks before Troy.

ūllus, a, um, *any; any one.*

ūlterior, ius, compar., *farther, further.*

ūltimus, a, um, superl., *farthest, remotest, extreme; latest, last; uttermost, utmost.*

ultor, ōris, m., *avenger.*

ūltrō, adv., *beyond; of one's own accord, voluntarily, into the bargain.*

ululātus, ūs, m., *crying, shriek, wailing.*

ululō, āre, etc., *cry, shriek, wail, howl; resound, echo.*

ulva, ae, f., *sedge; reedy growth* (in a marsh).

umbō, ōnis, m., *boss* or *knob* (of a shield).

umbra, ae, f., *shade; phantom.*

ūmidus, a, um, *damp; dewy.*

umquam (**unquam**), adv., *at any time, ever.*

ūnā, adv., *together, along (with).*

unda, ae, f., *wave, billow.*

unde, adv., *whence.*

undique, adv., *on all sides, from all sides.*

undō, āre, etc., *rise in waves; swell; surge.*

unquam, see **umquam**.

ūnus, a, um, *one; alone.*

urbs, is, f., *city.*

urgeō, ēre, ursī, *press, drive; press hard.*

ūrō, ere, ūssī, ūstum, *burn.*

ūsquam, adv., *anywhere.*

ūsque, adv., *ever, continuously; all the way, quite.*

ūsus, ūs, m., *use.*

ut or **uti**, adv., *how, as; just as; when;* conj. with subj., *that, in order that, so that.*

uterque, utraque, utrumque, *each, both.*

uterus, ī, m., *womb.*

utinam, conj., *O that; would that.*

V

vacuus, a, um, *empty.*

vādō, ere, *go, march, advance.*

vagor, ārī, ātus sum, *roam, wander, spread abroad.*

valeō, ēre, uī, itum, *be strong, be able, have power, avail;* imperative, **valē**, *farewell.*

validus, a, um, *stout, strong.*

vallis, is, f., *valley, vale.*

vānus, a, um, *empty; idle, vain; groundless, false.*

varius, a, um, *different, various, changing.*

vāstus, a, um, *desolate; vast, huge.*

vātēs, is, m. and f., *prophet, seer, soothsayer.*

-ve, enclitic conj., *or.*

vel, conj., *or;* **vel** . . . **vel**, *either . . . or.*

vellō, ere, vellī or vulsī, vulsum, *pluck, tear, wrench.*

vēlō, āre, etc., *cover, veil.*

vēlum, ī, n., *sail.*

velut, velutī, adv., *just as.*

venēnum, ī, n., *poison, venom.*

venio, īre, vēnī, ventum, *come.*

venter, tris, m., *belly; stomach.*

ventus, ī, m., *wind.*

Venus, eris, f., *Venus*, the goddess of love and beauty; *love.*

verbum, ī, n., *word.*
vērō, adv., *in truth, truly; indeed, but.*
versō, āre, etc., *turn, turn over; think over, meditate, ponder.*
vertex, icis, m., *top, summit.*
vertō, ere, tī, sum, *turn; overturn, overthrow.*
vērum, adv., *truly; but, yet.*
vērus, a, um, *true, real;* neut. as subst., **vērum**, ī, n. (usually plur.), *the truth.*
Vesta, ae, f., the goddess of the hearth and household.
vester, tra, trum, *your, yours.*
vestigium, ī, n., *foot-print.*
vestis, is, f., *clothing, garment.*
vetō, āre, uī, itum, *forbid.*
vetus, eris, *old.*
vetustus, a, um, *old, ancient.*
via, ae, f., *way, road, path, street.*
viātor, ōris, m., *wayfarer, traveller.*
vibrō, āre, etc., *quiver.*
vicis, gen. (nom. not found), f., *change, interchange; encounter.*
victor, ōris, m., *victor;* as adj. *victorious, triumphant.*
victōria, ae, f., *victory, triumph, conquest.*
videō, ēre, vīdī, vīsum, *see;* in pass., *be seen, seem;* impersonal, *seem best.*
vigeō, ēre *thrive, flourish.*
vigil, ilis, m., *watchman.*
vincō, ere, vīcī, victum, *conquer.*
vinculum (vinclum), ī, n., *bond, fetter.*
vīnum, ī, n., *wine.*
violābilis, e, *violable.*
violō, āre, etc., *violate, injure, profane.*
vir, ī, m., *man; husband; hero.*
virgineus, a, um, *of a maiden, maiden.*
virgō, inis, f., *maiden, virgin.*
virtūs, tūtis, f., *manliness, courage, valor; excellence, virtue.*
vīs, acc. vim, f., *strength, power, might; force, violence.*
vīsō, ere, vīsī, vīsum, *go to see, visit; examine.*
vīsus, ūs, m., *view, sight, vision.*
vīta, ae, f., *life.*
vītō, āre, etc., *avoid, shun.*
vitta, ae, f., *fillet, band, chaplet.*
vīvō, ere, vīxī, (vīctum), *live.*
vīvus, a, um, *alive, living.*
vix, adv., *hardly, scarcely.*
vocō, āre, etc., *call, summon.*
volō, velle, voluī, *wish.*
volō, āre, etc., *fly.*
volucer, cris, cre, *flying, winged, swift.*
volūmen, minis, n., *coil, fold.*
volvō, ere, volvī, volūtum, *roll.*
vōtum, ī, n., *vow; votive offering.*
vōx, vōcis, f., *voice, word, saying, utterance.*
Vulcānus, ī, m., *Vulcan*, the god of fire; hence, *fire.*
vulgō, adv., *commonly; everywhere.*
vulgus, ī, m. and n., *the common people; crowd; mob.*
vulnus, eris, n., *wound, blow.*
vultus, ūs, m., *countenance, face; aspect, mien.*

APPENDIX

HEROES AND IMPORTANT PERSONS IN THE TROJAN LEGEND

N.B. — The information contained in this Appendix is most important for the sake of a literary knowledge of Vergil's story, and should be carefully studied by the pupil.

ON THE TROJAN SIDE

Hector

In the Homeric legend the chief champion of Troy is Hector, eldest son of King Priam. The death and burial of Hector form the climax of Homer's *Iliad*. The story of his farewell visit to Troy from the battlefield and his leave-taking of his wife, **Andromache**, and infant son, **Astyanax**, as told by Homer in *Iliad*, VI, should be read by the student. Achilles pursued him thrice round Troy, slew him, and dragged the body at his chariot wheels to the Grecian camp on the shore. The aged Priam ventured unarmed and unattended into the camp, and secured by entreaty from Achilles the body and a twelve days' truce for the funeral ceremonies. See Homer, *Iliad*, XXII and XXIV; also *Aeneid*, II, 270.

On the taking of Troy, Astyanax was hurled from the battlements and Andromache became the consort of Pyrrhus, by whom she was subsequently deserted. She then married Helenus, brother of Hector, who had come to live in Epirus.

Aeneas

In Vergil's legend, Aenēas, by a sort of apostolic appointment, succeeds to Hector as the leader and protector of the Trojan race. He becomes the founder of Rome, and through his son, **Iulus** (or **Ascanius**), the ancestor of the family of Julius Caesar. He is represented as the son of the goddess **Venus** and **Anchīsēs**, a descendant of Dardanus. He would therefore be a member of the Trojan royal house and a kinsman of Priam. Aeneas, after a vain attempt to save Troy, left the city, carrying Anchises on his shoulders, and leading Ascanius by the hand. His wife, **Creusa**, following behind, was lost in the terror and darkness, and later appeared to him as a phantom, bidding him godspeed in his mission to find a new home for the remnant of the Trojan race. Acting on the mandate of the Fates, as conveyed to him by the shade of Hector (*Aeneid*, II, 270–297), Aeneas carries forth the Penates, or household gods of Troy, and after seven years' wandering around the Mediterranean at the head of a small band of Trojan refugees, he lands in Italy. Here he conquers the Etruscan prince, Turnus, marries Lavinia, and settles down in the kingdom of his father-in-law, Latīnus. In the *Aeneid* he is repeatedly called *pater* (as the father of the Roman nation) and *pius* (in recognition of his dutiful reverence to heaven's will and his filial love for Anchises).

Priam

The king of Troy who witnessed the height of her splendor, as well as her downfall, was Priam. His wife was **Hecuba.** He is said to have had fifty sons, and one legend gives him also fifty daughters. His sons, **Hector** and **Polītēs**, figure in *Aeneid*, II, the latter murdered before his father's eyes in the captured palace. **Paris**, a son, was the cause of the Trojan war. Priam was slain at the family altar by Pyrrhus.

Paris

Paris, also called Alexander, second son of Priam and Hecuba, was the fated cause of ruin to his native city. At his birth, owing to a prophecy as to his future, he was exposed on Mt. Ida, but survived and was brought up as a shepherd. Here he acted as judge in the contest for the golden apple of discord between Venus, Juno, and Minerva. Having awarded the apple to Venus, he was by her allowed to carry off Helen from Sparta, thus bringing destruction upon Troy. He is described as effeminate and luxurious, though capable of being roused to deeds of valor. In fact, his name Alexander ("defender of men") was, as it were by an irony of fate, conferred upon him by the shepherds of Ida for his bravery in defending themselves and their flocks. One legend makes him the slayer of Achilles. At the capture of Troy he received a wound of which he soon afterwards died, the nymph Oenóné, his former bride, having refused to heal it.

Cassandra

Cassandra (see *Aeneid*, II, 342 and 403) was daughter of Priam. Being beloved by the god Apollo, she was inspired by him with the gift of prophecy, but as she spurned his love he, because unable to withdraw the gift once bestowed, ordained that her prophecies should never be believed. On the capture of the city, she fell to the lot of Agamemnon, and accompanied him to Mycenae.

ON THE GREEK SIDE

Achilles

Achilles was the most valiant champion of the Greeks at Troy. He was king of a petty state in Thessaly, leader of the Myrmidons and Dolopians. Because Larissa was an important town of Thessaly, he is called Larissaean (or Thessalian) Achilles. The anger of Achilles in his quarrel with Agamem-

non over a captive maiden, Chryseis, and the vengeance he wreaked upon Hector for the death of his friend Patroclus form the theme of Homer's *Iliad.*

The Sons of Atreus

The brothers, Menelaus and Agamemnon, were the persons highest in authority among the Greeks at Troy. **Menelaus** was king of Sparta, husband of Helen, and instigator of the war. **Agam mnon** was king of Argos[1] and Mycenae, and commander in chief of the Greek army at Troy. When the fleet was at Aulis on the coast of Boeotia in northeastern Greece waiting to sail to Troy, he sacrificed his daughter **Iphigenia** to appease the adverse winds (see *Aeneid*, II, 116). On his return home after the war he was murdered by his wife Clytaemnestra and Aegisthus.

Ulysses

Ulysses (Greek, *Odysseus;* Latin, *Ulixes*) was king of Ithaca, an island west of Greece. He was noted for his resourcefulness and cunning. The many adventures through which he passed on returning home from Troy form the subject of Homer's *Odyssey.* A legend states that Ulysses was with great difficulty induced to go to Troy. When **Palamedes** came to Ithaca to fetch him, he feigned madness by yoking an ass and an ox to a plough and sowing the seashore with salt. Palamedes exposed the trick by placing his infant son, Telemachus, before the plough, thus incurring the undying hatred of Ulysses (see *Aeneid*, II, 82). Ulysses and Diomede entered Troy and carried off the Palladium. On the death of Achilles, Ulysses was by vote of the chieftains awarded the arms of that hero.

[1] Argos here means the Peloponnesus or southern peninsula of Greece, in which were situated Sparta, Mycenae, and the city of Argos.

Diomede

Diomede (Greek *Diomēdēs*) was the son of Tydeus and king of the city of Argos. He was, after Achilles, the bravest hero in the Greek army at Troy. He assisted Ulysses in stealing the Palladium.

The Two Ajaxes

1. Ajax, son of Telamon, king of Salamis, was called Ajax the Greater. He ranked as one of the bravest heroes at Troy. On the death of Achilles he was defeated in the contest for the armor of the chieftain by Ulysses. As a consequence he became insane, and rushing forth from his tent slaughtered a flock of sheep, thinking they were Greeks; he then slew himself.

2. Ajax, son of Oïleus, king of the Locrians, was called Ajax the Less. According to Vergil he was shipwrecked and drowned on his way home, as a punishment from Minerva for a crime against Cassandra in the temple of the goddess on the night of the capture of Troy.

Pyrrhus

Pyrrhus ("the golden-haired") or Neoptolemus ("late-comer-to-the-war") was son of Achilles. He came to Troy, after his father's death, from the island of Scyros, where he had been born and where he was reared from childhood by his grandfather, Lycomēdes, king of the island. At Troy he figured as leader of the Greeks in the capture of Priam's palace and as the slayer of the aged king.